



**With threats.** Show that "with" here is more correct than "by."  
*Mid. Gram.* § 275 (b).

**Sacrilege.** An impious act, the profanation of something sacred.

**In scorn.** In contempt of their threats.

**11. Its rim.** The rim or edge of the crater.

**The fiery gulf below.** "Below" is an adverb. What does it qualify?  
*Mid. Gram.* § 255 (c). (It qualifies the participle "lying" understood.)

**Hurling.** Throwing.

**Plucked.** Picked.

**May not tread.** Is not permitted to tread.

**12. Reascended.** Went up the crater again, after having gone down it.

**Stronghold.** Fortress, bulwark.

**Thenceforth.** From that day forward.

**Slunk away.** Went away with shame.

**Renounced.** Openly abandoned.

**Defiance of death.** Contempt for death.

**Merely to show.** For no better reason than to show.

**Fetters.** Chains.

#### WORDS.

1. **Islands.** Insular, isolate.  
**Heat.** Heat (*verb*), heat (*noun*), hot, hotly.  
**Perpetual.** Perpetuate, perpetuity, perpetually.  
**Permit.** Permission, permissive.
2. **Tranquil.** Tranquillise, tranquilly, tranquillity.  
**Terribly.** Terror, terrible, terrify, terrific.
- Active.** Agent, agency, act, action, active, actively.
- Liquid.** Liquor, liquid, liquefy.
- Vapour.** Vaporous, e-vaporate.
3. **Periods.** Periodical.
- Awfulness.** Awe (*verb*), awe

(*noun*), awful, awfully, awfulness.

**Imagination.** Image, imagine, imagination, imaginative imaginary.

**Living.** Life, live, lively, vital (*Latin form*).

**Destruction.** Destroy, destruction, destructive, destructively, destructible.

**Dense.** Densely, density, condense.

**Mastery.** Master (*noun*), master (*verb*), masterly.

4. **Nation.** National, nationalise.

**Divine.** God, godlike, divine (*Latin form*).

**Similar.** Similar, similarity, assimilate, re-semble.

**Home.** Homely, domestic (*Latin form*).

5. **Touch.** Tangent, con-tact, touchingly.

**Approached.** Approach, approximate.

**Tomb.** En-tomb, tumular.

**Time.** Timely, temporal (*Latin form*).

**Name.** Nominal, nominate.

**Fictitious.** Feign, fiction.

6. **Bondage.** Bind, bond, bondage.

**Gradually.** Gradual, graduate, grade, de-gree.

**Revere.** Reverence, reverend, reverential, reverentially.

**Heaven.** Heavenly, celestial (*Latin form*).

7. **Sights.** See, sight, un-sightly.

**Sounds.** Re-sound, sonorous.

**Moment.** Momentous, momentary.

**Provoke.** Provocation, provokingly.

**Young.** Youth, youthful.

**New.** Newly, renew, renewal, novel, novelty.

**Descend.** Descent, descendant.

**Matter.** Material, materially.

**Inhabitants.** Inhabit, habitation, habitable.

# MIDDLE READER

## PART II

WITH NOTES AND EXPLANATIONS

BY

J. C. NESFIELD, M.A.

MACMILLAN AND CO.  
BEDFORD STREET, STRAND, LONDON  
BOMBAY AND CALCUTTA

1895

*All rights reserved*

## NOTES

are rejected, the spider resorts to flattery,—praises her wit and wisdom, her brilliant eyes, her ganzy wings glistening like pearl or silver, her green and purple robes, the crest upon her head, her eyes as bright as diamonds (stanzas 4 and 5).

Charmed with these flatteries, the fly hovers above the web, and is caught (stanza 6).

1. **Parlour.** This is the name given to a room intended for the reception of visitors.

**Stair.** Stairease. A stair is one step of a series of steps for ascending or descending from one floor of a house to another. It is more common to speak of stairs or a staircase than of a single stair. The noun "stair" in this place is used in a collective sense and means a succession of stairs, or a staircase.

**Who goes up.** See *Mid. Gram.* § 159 (a).

2. **You must be, etc.** On this sense of "must" see *Mid. Gram.* p. 218 (a).

**Soaring.** Flying up to a great height. Is this a Verbal noun or a Verbal adjective?

**Tuck you in.** Tuck the sheets closely under you and around you. "To tuck" means to draw up, or press into a narrower compass; as "tuck up your sleeves."

3. **Pantry.** A storeroom for keeping food.

**Good store.** Ample supply.

4. **Gauzy.** Gauze is a thin, light, transparent stuff; it can be made of either silk or cotton.

**Sweet creature—yourself.** Turn this into the Indirect narration.

5. **Turned him.** Here "him" is used for the Reflexive form "himself."

**Subtle.** Very fine and thin.

**Sly.** Secret; fitted for a sly insect like a spider, which attacks its prey from the secret corners of its web.

**Pearl and silver wing.** Win pearl and silver; that is, glisten like a pearl or like silver. P. "pearl" and "silver." *Mid. Gra* § 388.

6. **Wily.** Cunning; full of wile  
**Hung aloft.** Hovered above the web. A bird or fly is said to "hover" when it hangs fluttering in the air without changing its place. It does this preparatory to settling down on the spot above which it continues hovering. On the conjugation of "hang" see *Mid. Gram.* p. 208.

**Up jumped.** For the sake of emphasis the "up" is placed first. The ordinary order of the word is "jumped up." See *Mid. Gram.* § 414 (b).

### 25.—The Delhi Massacre.

1. **Monarch.** The king or ruler of large dominion.

**But.** Except. This is a preposition. Point out its object. *Mid. Gram.* § 235 (d).

**To surrender.** To give himself up, to submit.

**Distributed.** Posted in different places.

**To be observed.** This Infinitive stands as complement to the verb "ordered." *Mid. Gram.* § 178.

**Discipline.** Orderly behaviour, obedience to the commands of those in authority.

**Stationed.** Placed, posted.

2. **Precautions.** Plans for protecting the people.

**Conciliating.** Reconciling, appeasing, pacifying. Is this a Verbal noun or a Verbal adjective?

**Ferocity.** Fierce and warlike appearance.

**Intrusion.** Coming into another man's place without his consent.

**Fell on.** Attacked.

**Sacrifices.** Victims. This is the complement to the verb "fell."

*Registered under Act No. XXV. of 1867.*

# CONTENTS.

*The Italics indicate Poetical Pieces.*

	PAGE
1. THE THREE PAINTERS: ENVY AND EMULATION . . .	1
2. <i>THE SOLDIER'S FUNERAL—Mrs. Maclean</i> . . .	4
3. MAXIMS ON INDUSTRY AND THRIFT . . .	5
4. <i>LORD ULLIN'S DAUGHTER—Campbell</i> . . .	10
5. ANONYMOUS LETTERS . . .	12
6. THE VOLCANO OF THE HAWAIIANS . . .	13
7. THE LION AND THE SPANIEL: GENEROSITY . . .	17
8. <i>THE DOG AND THE WATER LILY—Cowper</i> . . .	21
9. THE WRESTLER AND HIS PUPIL . . .	23
10. THE RAT WITH A BELL . . .	24
11. FILIAL LOVE . . .	25
§ 1. Alexander the Great and his Mother.	
§ 2. <i>Napoleon and the Young English Sailor—Campbell.</i>	
12. THE DISCOVERY OF VACCINATION . . .	29
13. <i>ALICE FELL—Wordsworth</i> . . .	31
14. ON THE TREATMENT OF INFERIORS. . .	34
§ 1. The Gentleman or Man of Breeding.	
§ 2. Undue Reserve of a Master Rebuked.	
15. LOST OPPORTUNITIES . . .	36
§ 1. Sayings and Precepts.	
§ 2. The Parable of the Ten Virgins.	
§ 3. <i>Too Late—Tennyson.</i>	
16. THE WHALE . . .	38
§ 1. The Whale in General.	
§ 2. Whale-fishing.	
§ 3. The Kinds of Whales.	
§ 4. Uses of the Whale.	
§ 5. Lines on the Whale.	
17. SOLON AND CRÆSUS . . .	44

# MIDDLE READER, PART 2

	PAGE
18. PROVERBS THAT ARE PERNICIOUS . . . . .	49
19. THE LOSS OF THE ROYAL GEORGE— <i>Cooper</i> . . . . .	51
20. DEATH OF AURANGZEB: REMORSE . . . . .	52
21. EXTRACT FROM THE SERMON ON THE MOUNT . . . . .	54
22. FIDELITY . . . . .	57
§ 1. The Arab and his Horse.	
§ 2. Irma and the Lion.	
§ 3. <i>The Dog and its Master—Wordsworth.</i>	
23. SALT . . . . .	64
24. THE SPIDER AND THE FLY . . . . .	68
25. THE DELHI MASSACRE . . . . .	70
26. BELSHAZZAR'S FEAST . . . . .	73
§ 1. In Prose.	
§ 2. In Verse.	
27. THE ELEPHANT . . . . .	78
§ 1. General Description.	
§ 2. The Trunk of the Elephant.	
28. ELEPHANTS IN SAW-MILLS . . . . .	82
29. CAPTURING WILD ELEPHANTS . . . . .	83
§ 1. Capturing a Single Elephant.	
§ 2. Capturing a Herd.	
30. STORIES ABOUT ELEPHANTS . . . . .	86
§ 1. An Elephant's Revenge.	
§ 2. An Elephant's Remorse.	
§ 3. An Elephant's Patience.	
§ 4. An Elephant's Gratitude.	
31. MAKE HASTE TO LIVE— <i>Horatius Bonar</i> . . . . .	90
32. SELECT PRECEPTS . . . . .	92
§ 1. From the Proverbs of Solomon.	
§ 2. From the Sayings of Confucius.	
§ 3. Dialogue between Naushewan, the Persian King, and his Prime Minister	
§ 4. General.	

NOTES ON THE ABOVE LESSONS . . . . .	95
--------------------------------------	----

## PART II.

### 1.—Envy and Emulation.

1. At one of the celebrated schools of painting in Italy, a young man named Guidotto produced a picture of such merit, that it was the admiration of the masters in the art, all of whom declared it to be their opinion that he could not fail to rise to the top of his profession, if he went on as he had begun.

2. This performance was looked upon with different eyes, by two of his fellow-scholars. Brunello, the elder of the two, who had himself acquired some reputation in his studies, was mortified in the highest degree at the superiority of Guidotto. (Regarding all the honour acquired by his rival as so much honour taken from himself,) he conceived the most rancorous dislike of him, and longed for nothing so much as to see him lose the credit he had gained. Afraid openly to decry the merit of a work which had obtained the approbation of the best judges, he threw out a secret insinuation that Guidotto had been assisted in it by one or other of his masters; and he affected to represent it as a sort of lucky hit, which the reputed author would probably never repeat.

3. Not so Lorenzo, the second fellow-student. Though quite a novice in the art, he perceived in its full extent the excellence of Guidotto's performance, and became one



Of the sincerest of his admirers. (Fired with the praises he saw him receive on all sides, he ardently longed to make himself worthy of similar homage.) He placed him before his eyes as a model which it was his highest ambition to equal; for as to excelling him, he could not as yet conceive the possibility of such a thing. He never spoke of him but with rapture, and could not bear to hear him disparaged by Brunello.

4. But Lorenzo did not content himself with words. He entered with his whole soul into the career of improvement. He was first and last of all the scholars in the studio, and devoted to practice at home those hours which the other youths passed in idleness or amusement. It was long before he could be satisfied with any of his attempts, and he was continually repeating over them: "Alas! how far distant is this from Guidotto!" At length, however, he had the satisfaction of becoming sensible of progress; and having received considerable applause on account of one of his performances, he ventured to say to himself, "And why may not I too become a Guidotto?"

5. Meanwhile, Guidotto continued to bear away the palm from all competitors. Brunello struggled awhile to contest with him, but at length gave up the point, and consoled himself for his inferiority by ill-natured sarcasm and petulant criticism. Lorenzo worked away in silence, and for a long time his modesty did not suffer him to place any piece of his own on view at the same time with one of Guidotto's.

6. There was a certain day in the year on which it was customary for all the scholars to exhibit their best performance in a public hall, where their respective merits were solemnly judged by a number of select examiners, and a prize of great value was awarded to the most excellent. Guidotto had prepared for this anniversary a piece which was to excel all that he had before executed. He had just finished it on the evening before the exhibition, and nothing remained but to heighten the colour by means of a transparent varnish. The malignant Brunello con-

trived artfully to convey into the phial, in which this varnish was put, some drops of a caustic preparation, the effect of which would be to entirely destroy the beauty and splendour of the piece. Guidotto laid it on by candle-light, and then with great satisfaction hung up his picture in the public room against the morrow.

7. Lorenzo, too, with beating heart had himself prepared a picture for the day. With vast application he had finished a piece which he humbly hoped might appear not greatly inferior to some of Guidotto's earlier performances.

8. The hour of the exhibition had now arrived. The company assembled, and were introduced into the great room, where the light had just been fully admitted by drawing up a curtain. All went up with raised expectations to Guidotto's picture,—when, behold! instead of the beautiful painting they anticipated, there was nothing but a dead surface of confused and blotched colours. "Surely," they cried, "this cannot be Guidotto's!"

9. The unfortunate youth himself came up, and on beholding the dismal change in his favourite piece burst out into an agony of grief, and exclaimed that he was ruined and undone. The vile Brunello stood in a corner enjoying his distress. But Lorenzo was little less affected than Guidotto himself. "Trick! knavery!" he cried. "Indeed, gentlemen, this is not Guidotto's work; I saw it when only half-finished, and it was even then a most charming performance. Look at the outline, and judge what it must have been before it was so basely injured by some malicious and artful person."

10. The spectators were all struck with Lorenzo's generous warmth, and sympathised in the distress of Guidotto; but it was impossible to adjudge the prize to his picture in the state in which they beheld it. They examined all the others attentively; and that done by Lorenzo, who till then was to them an unknown artist, gained a great majority of suffrages. The prize was therefore awarded to him; but Lorenzo, on receiving it, went up to Guidotto, and presented it to him. "Take the re-

ward," said he, "that merit would undoubtedly have earned for you, had the basest malice and envy not defrauded you of it. To me it is honour enough to be accounted your second. If hereafter I may aspire to equal you, it shall be by means of fair competition,—not by the aid of treachery."

11. Lorenzo's disinterested conduct excited the warmest admiration among the judges, who at length determined that, for this time, there should be two equal prizes distributed: declaring, that if Guidotto had deserved the prize for painting, Lorenzo was entitled to that for generosity and nobleness of heart.

## 2.—The Soldier's Funeral.

### 1.

The muffled drum rolls on the air;  
Warriors with stately steps are there;  
On every arm is the black crape bound;  
Every carbine is turned to the ground;  
Solemn the sound of their measured tread,  
As silent and slow they follow the dead;  
The riderless horse is led in the rear;  
White plumes are waving over the bier;  
Helmet and sword are laid on the pall:  
For this was a soldier's funeral.

### 2.

That soldier had stood on the battle-plain,  
Where every step was over the slain;  
But the brand and the ball had passed him by,  
And he came to his native land—to die!  
'Twas hard to come to the native land,  
And not clasp one familiar hand!

'Twas hard to be numbered among the dead  
 Or e'er he could hear his welcome said !  
 But 'twas something to see its cliffs once more  
 And to lay his bones on his own loved shore ;  
 To think that the friends of his youth might weep  
 O'er the green grass turf of the soldier's sleep.

## 3.

The bugles ceased their wailing sound,  
 As the coffin was lowered into the ground ;  
 A volley was fired, a blessing said ;  
 One moment's pause—and they left the dead.  
 I saw a poor and aged man,  
 His step was feeble, his lip was wan ;  
 He knelt him down on the new-raised mound,  
 His face was bowed on the cold damp ground :  
 He raised his head, his tears were done,—  
 The father had prayed o'er his only son.

MRS. MACLEAN.

## 3.—Maxims on Industry and Thrift.

COURTEOUS READER,

1. I have heard that nothing gives an author so much pleasure as to find his works respectfully quoted by others. Judge, then, how much I must have been gratified by an incident I am going to relate to you. I stopped my horse lately where a great number of people were collected at an auction of merchants' goods. The hour of the sale not being come, they were conversing on the badness of the times ; and one of the company called to a plainly dressed, clean, old man, with white locks, "Pray, father Abraham, what think you of the times ? Will not those heavy taxes quite ruin the country ? How shall we be

ever able to pay them? What would you advise us to do?" Father Abraham stood up, and replied, "If you would have my advice, I will give it you in short; for, as the proverb says, 'a word to the wise is enough.'" They joined in desiring him (to speak his mind;) so standing in the midst of them he proceeded as follows:—

### § 1. INDUSTRY.

2. "Friends," said he, "the taxes are indeed very heavy; and if those laid on by the Government were the only ones we had to pay, we might more easily discharge them; but we have many others and much more grievous to some of us. We are taxed twice as much by our idleness, three times as much by our pride, and four times as much by our folly, and from these taxes the Commissioners cannot ease or deliver us by allowing an abatement. However, let us hearken to good advice, and something may be done for us. Remember, '(God helps those that help themselves.)'

3. It would be thought a hard government that should tax its people one-tenth part of their time to be employed in its service. But (idleness taxes many of us much more;) sloth, by bringing on diseases, absolutely shortens life. Sloth, like rust, consumes faster than labour wears, while the used key is always bright. But dost thou love life? then do not squander time; for that is the stuff life is made of. How much more than is necessary do we spend in sleep, forgetting that the 'sleeping fox catches no poultry,' and that there will be sleeping enough in the grave.

4. If time be of all things the most precious, the wasting of time must be the greatest prodigality; since, as the proverb tells us, 'Lost time is never found again,' and what we call time enough always proves little enough. (Let us then be up and doing, and doing to the purpose;) so by diligence shall we do more, and do it with less pen-

plexity. Sloth makes all things difficult, but industry all easy. 'He that riseth late must trot all day,' and will scarce overtake his business at night; (while laziness travels so slowly, that poverty soon overtakes him.) (Drive the business;) let it not drive thee, and bear in mind the old adage, 'Early to bed, and early to rise, makes a man healthy, wealthy, and wise.'

5. So, what signifies wishing and hoping for better times? We may *make* these times better if we bestir ourselves. (Industry need not wish, and he that lives upon hope will die fasting.) There are no gains without pains. 'He that hath a trade, hath an estate; and he that hath a calling, hath an office of profit and honour;' but then the trade must be worked at, and the calling well followed, or neither the estate nor the office will enable us to pay our taxes. If we are industrious we shall never starve; for (At the working man's house hunger looks in, but dare not enter.) Nor will the bailiff or the constable enter; for 'Industry pays debts, while despair increases them!' What though you have found no treasure, nor has any rich relation left you a legacy, you know what the proverb says, that, 'Diligence is the mother of good luck, and God gives all things to industry.'

## § 2. THRIFT.

6. So much for industry, my friends; but to this we must add thrift or frugality, if we would make our industry more certainly successful. A man if he does not save as he gets, may be forced to 'keep his nose all his life to the grindstone, and die not worth a groat at last.'

(If you would be wealthy, think of saving as well as of getting.) (The Indies did not make Spain rich, because her outgoings were greater than her incomings.)

7. Away, then, with your expensive follies, and you will not then have so much cause to complain of hard times, heavy taxes, and families which you cannot rear.

'What maintains one vice would bring up two children.' You may think, perhaps, that a little tea, or a little punch now and then, diet a little more costly, clothes a little finer, and a little entertainment now and then, can be no great matter; but remember {Many a little makes a mickle.} Beware of little expenses. {A small leak will sink a great ship;} and again, 'Who dainties love shall beggars prove'; and, moreover, {Fools make feasts, and wise men eat them.}

8. Here you are all got together to this sale of fineries and knick-knacks. You call them goods; but if you do not take care, they will prove evils to some of you. You expect they will sell cheap, and perhaps they may sell for less than they cost; but if you have no occasion for them, they must be dear to you. Remember what the proverb says, {Buy what thou hast no need of, and ere long thou shalt sell thy necessities.}

9. But what madness it must be to run into debt for the sake of superfluities! We are offered, by the terms of this auction that is now going to take place, six months' credit; and that perhaps has induced some of us to attend it, because we cannot spare the ready money, and hope now to be fine without it. But, ah! think what you do when you run into debt. You place your liberty in the power of another. If you cannot pay at the time, you will be ashamed to see your creditor; you will be in fear when you speak to him; you will make poor, pitiful, sneaking excuses, and, by degrees, come to lose your veracity, and sink into base downright lying; for remember the old saying, {The second vice is lying, the first is running into debt.} And again, to the same purpose, {Lying rides upon debt's back;} whereas a free-born Englishman ought not to be ashamed nor afraid to see or speak to any man living. But poverty often deprives a man of all spirit and virtue. {It is hard for an empty sack to stand upright.}

10. What would you think of that prince or of that ruler, who should issue an edict forbidding you to dress

like a gentleman or gentlewoman, on pain of imprisonment or servitude? Would you not say that you were free and had a right to dress as you pleased, and that such an edict would be a breach of your privileges, and such government tyrannical? and yet you are about to put yourself under that tyranny, when you run into debt for such dress! Your creditor has authority, at his pleasure, to deprive you of your liberty, by confining you in gaol for life, or by selling you for a servant, if you should not be able to pay him.

11. When you have got your bargain, you may perhaps think little of payment; but remember, 'Creditors have better memories than debtors.' The day comes round before you are aware, and the demand is made before you are prepared to satisfy it; or, if you bear your debt in mind, the term, which at first seemed so long, as it lessens, appears extremely short. Time will seem to have added wings to his heels as well as his shoulders.)

12. This doctrine, my friend, is reason and wisdom; but after all do not depend too much upon your own industry, frugality, and prudence, though excellent things; for they may all be blasted without the blessing of Heaven; and therefore ask that blessing humbly, and be not uncharitable to those that at present seem to want it, but comfort and help them. Remember, Job suffered, and was afterwards prosperous."

### CONCLUSION.

13. Thus the old gentleman ended his harangue. The people heard and approved the doctrine, but immediately practised the contrary; for the auction opened, and they began to buy extravagantly. I found the good man had thoroughly studied my almanac, and digested all I had dropped on these topics during the course of twenty-five years. The many maxims that he quoted from me must have tried any one else; but my vanity was wonderfully delighted with it, though I was conscious that not a tenth



part of the wisdom was my own, but rather the gleanings that I have made of the sense of all ages and nations. However, I resolved to be the better for the echo of it, and, though I had at first determined to buy stuff for a new coat, I went away, resolved to wear my old one a little longer. Reader, if you will do the same, thy profit will be as great as mine.

FRANKLIN'S *Almanac* (*adapted*).

#### 4.—Lord Ullin's Daughter.

1.

A Chieftain to the Highlands bound  
Cries, "Boatman, do not farry !  
And I'll give thee a silver pound  
To row us o'er the ferry !"

2.

"Now who be ye would cross Lochgyle,  
This dark and stormy water ?"  
"O, I'm the chief of Ulva's Isle,  
And this Lord Ullin's daughter.

3.

"And fast before her father's men  
Three days we've fled together ;  
For should he find us in the glen,  
My blood would stain the heather.

4.

"His horsemen hard behind us ride—  
Should they our steps discover,  
Then who will cheer my bonny bride,  
When they have slain her lover ?"

5.

Out spoke the hardy Highland wight,  
 "I'll go, my chief, I'm ready :  
 It is not for your silver bright,  
 But for your winsome lady :

6.

"And by my word ! the bonny bird  
 In danger shall not tarry ;  
 So though the waves are raging white,  
 I'll row you o'er the ferry."

7.

By this the storm grew loud apace,  
 The water-wraith was shrieking ;  
 And in the scowl of Heaven each face  
 Grew dark as they were speaking.

8.

But still as wilder blew the wind,  
 And as the night grew drearer,  
 Adown the glen rode armed men,  
 Their trampling sounded nearer.

9.

"O haste thee, haste !" the lady cries,  
 "Though tempest round us gather,  
 I'll meet the raging of the skies,  
 But not an angry father."

10.

The boat has left a stormy land,  
 A stormy sea before her,—  
 When, O ! too strong for human hand,  
 The tempest gathered o'er her.

## 11.

And still they row'd amidst the roar  
Of waters fast prevailing :  
Lord Ullin reached that fatal shore,  
His wrath was changed to wailing.

## 12.

For, sore dismay'd, through storm and shade  
His child he did discover :  
One lovely hand she stretch'd for aid,  
And one was round her lover.

## 13.

"Come back ; come back !" he cried in grief  
Across this stormy water :  
"And I'll forgive your Highland chief,  
My daughter !—O my daughter !"

## 14.

'Twas vain : the loud waves lash'd the shore,  
Return or aid preventing :  
The waters wild went o'er his child,  
And he was left lamenting.

CAMPBELL.

### 5.—Anonymous Letters.

1. General Rowlands has recently lectured the men of several British regiments on the unmanly and un-English practice of writing anonymous letters. We are sorry the practice is not limited to soldiers. It is often the resort of people from whom it would be least expected. "Unmanly and un-English" are strong terms, but not too strong. No true lady or gentleman, who has regard for

honour and for the feelings of others, will ever resort to so questionable a practice.

2. It signifies that the writer lacks {moral courage} to affix his name, and either cannot or dare not face the consequences of what he writes. When written to wound the feelings of another, it is a {cowardly thrust in the dark.} Even if written with the best of intentions, such letters nearly always excite fears and anxieties, and lead to damaging suspicions. The circumstances under which they are written usually {give a clue to the author}, and when once a person is suspected of the deed, he falls irreparably in the estimation of those suspecting him. And when the suspicion fastens upon the wrong party, as is often the case, a grave injustice is done.

3. Two rules should therefore be followed regarding anonymous letters :—

(1) Never, under any circumstances, write them.

(2) When they are received, destroy them at once. The contents may be libellous and most unjust, but never give any intimation to any one that they have been received.

## 6.—The Volcano of the Hawaiians ; Superstition Defied.

1. Few regions in the world are more beautiful than those islands far away in the Pacific which are marked on the map as the Sandwich Isles. They are to a large extent level on the outer rim ; but in the midst of them are lofty mountains thrown up by the subterranean heat which we call volcanic. In sailing towards these islands the first spectacle that meets the eye is a pair of lofty peaks, each two miles and a half high. One is white with perpetual snow ; the other is dark,—dark with lava and cinders, on which the inward heat will not permit the snow to cast its cold white mantle.

2. The first of these has been tranquil for many years; the other is the largest and most terribly active volcano in the world, and is named Kilauea. The enormous crater is a lake of liquid fire, from six to nine miles in circumference. Over it plays a continual vapour, which hangs by day like a silvery cloud, and in the night is red and glowing like a forest in flames.

3. Tremendous is the scene at all times; but at the periods of eruption its awfulness is beyond all description or imagination. Rivers of boiling lava, blood-red with heat, rush down the mountain side, forming cascades of living fire, or spreading destruction over the plains. If a stream reach the sea, it struggles and hisses in bubbling flames and dense smoke, as if it disputed the mastery with the other element.

4. A superstitious nation like the Hawaiians, living among such terror-striking scenes, could not fail to ascribe them to some god or goddess. The very name of volcano testifies to the belief of the ancient Greeks, that the burning mountains of the Mediterranean were the workshops of the divine blacksmith, Vulcan. Similarly, in the Sandwich Islands, the terrible Kilauea was supposed to be the home of a goddess whose bath was in the mighty crater, and whose hair was supposed to be the streaks of flame that rose up out of the earth.

5. This imaginary goddess was believed to have whims and fancies of her own; and one of these was that no woman was permitted to touch the verge of her mountain or pluck the berries of a certain bush which grew up the sides. If any woman approached her or plucked these berries, her wrath might involve the whole island in one fiery tomb. Such was the belief of the Hawaiians at the time we are speaking of. The name which they gave to this fictitious deity was Pélé.

6. At length, however, the islanders were delivered from the bondage of terror into the freedom of a clearer light. Men from England came amongst them, who taught them a better way. Intercourse with Europeans

made them ashamed of the superstitions of their forefathers. Very gradually the faith of the people detached itself from the savage deities whom they had been accustomed to worship, and they began to revere the One true God, the Maker of heaven and earth.

7. But the terror which hung round Kilauea and the goddess supposed to dwell there could not be shaken off. There the fiery goddess still revelled in her fearful gambols; there the terrible sights and sounds, and the desolating streams that might at any moment burst from her reservoir of flame, were regarded as tokens of anger that the people feared to provoke. After the young King Liholiho and all his court had made up their minds to abandon their idols, give up their superstitions, and seek instruction from their new teachers, the priests of Pélé still sat at the base of her flaming mountain, and declared that her wrath would descend upon those who should forsake the ancient worship. It was still a matter of doubt among most of the inhabitants, and even among those who had become professors of the new faith, whether this terrible goddess would not one day rise in her wrath and overwhelm the island and all its inhabitants.

8. Then it was that a brave woman, strong in the faith of Christ which she had embraced, resolved to ascend the mountain, go down the side of the crater, and defy the goddess in her fastness, thus breaking for ever the spell that bound the trembling people to her worship. Her name was Kapioláni, wife of Naihé, one of the ministers of the king of Hawaii.

9. It needed more than ordinary faith to induce her to undertake the task which she had placed before her. In attempting such a task she was outraging the old notion, that fearful consequences must ensue if she transgressed the rule by which women were prohibited from approaching the stronghold of the goddess. Not only was the ascent difficult and toilsome, but the danger attending it was very great. Wild crags and slippery sheets of lava, or slopes of crumbling cinders, were painful to the

feet of the tender, coast-bred woman. The heated soil, the subterranean groanings, the lurid atmosphere, the vapour that oozed up from the crevices of the half-cooled lava, must have filled any mind but hers with terror, and specially the mind of one who had been taught from infancy to believe that these were the tokens of the fury of a vindictive and powerful deity, into whose precincts she was now trespassing. Not long ago a large body of men were suffocated on the mountain side by the noxious gases of the volcano—struck dead, as it must have seemed to the Hawaiians, by the angry breath of the goddess.

10. But Kapiolāni, strong in the faith that He, as whose champion she came, was all sufficient to guard her from the perils that confronted her, climbed resolutely on. The enraged priests of Pélé came forth from their sanctuary among the crags, and endeavoured to bar her way with threats of the rage of their mistress; but she heeded them not. She seized from a neighbouring bush some of those berries which it was sacrilege for one of her sex to touch, and holding them up to the priests in scorn, she said:—"I will not only ascend the mountain of your fictitious goddess, but I hereby trample her berries under my feet."

11. She at last reached the summit of the volcano, and standing on its rim gazed into the fiery gulf below. She then descended the side of the crater, even to the very edge of the boiling sea of fire, and hurling into it some other berries that she had plucked on the way, she exclaimed:—"If I perish by the anger of Pélé, then dread her power; but behold I defy her wrath; I have broken her laws; I have ascended the mountain on which a woman may not tread; I have gone down into her dwelling-place, and I look with scorn upon the abode of fire; I cast the berries which a woman may not touch into her own flame. I live and am safe; for Jehovah, the Almighty, is with me. His, and not hers, was the breath that kindled these flames: His is the hand that restrains their fury this day."

12. After uttering these brave words, which were heard with terror by some men who watched her from above, she reascended the crater, and retraced her steps to the plain below, where an anxious crowd awaited her return. She had won the cause for which she had risked her life. (The last stronghold of superstition was destroyed) Thenceforth the worship of Pélé was renounced by all men, and her priests slunk away in confusion and shame. Empedocles, the Greek, is said to have leaped into the burning crater of Mount Etna merely to show his defiance of death, and leave a great name behind him. Much more noble was the act of the Hawaiian woman, who broke the fetters of superstition, and taught her people to reverence the name of Him, by whose commands "the mountains quake and the hills melt like wax."

*Book of Golden Deeds (adapted).*

## 7.—The Lion and the Spaniel: Generosity.

1. In the afternoon our friends went again to the Tower to see, as well as hear, the recent story of the great lion and the little dog.

They found the place thronged, and all were obliged to pay treble prices on account of the unprecedented novelty of the show; so that the keeper, in a short space, acquired a little fortune.

2. The great cage in the front was occupied by a beast, who, by way of pre-eminence, was called the king's lion; and, while he traversed the limits of his straitened dominions, he was attended by a small and very beautiful black spaniel, who frisked and gambolled about him, and at times would pretend to snarl and bite at him; and again the noble animal, with an air of fond complaisance, would hold down his head, while the little creature licked his formidable chops. Their history, as the keeper related, was this:—



3. It was customary for all, who were unable or unwilling to pay their sixpence, to bring a dog or cat as an oblation to the beast in lieu of money to the keeper. Among others, a fellow had caught up this pretty black spaniel in the streets, and the poor little dog was accordingly thrown into the cage of the great lion. Immediately the little animal trembled, and shivered, and crouched and threw itself on its back, and put forth its tongue, and held out its paws in supplicatory attitudes, as an acknowledgment of superior power, and praying for mercy. In the meantime the lordly brute, instead of devouring it, beheld it with an eye of philosophic inspection. He turned it over with one paw, and then turned it with the other; and smelt at it, and seemed desirous of courting a further acquaintance.

4. The keeper, on seeing this, brought a large mess from his own table; but the lion kept aloof and refused to eat, keeping his eye on the dog, and inviting him as it were to be its taster. At length the little animal's fears being somewhat abated, and his appetite quickened by the smell of the victuals, he approached slowly, and, trembling with fear, ventured to eat. The lion then advanced gently and began to partake, and they finished their meal very lovingly together.

5. From this day the strictest friendship commenced between them, a friendship consisting of all possible affection and tenderness on the part of the lion, and of the utmost confidence and boldness on the part of the dog—inasmuch that the dog would lay himself down to sleep within the fangs and under the jaws of his terrible patron. A gentleman who had lost the spaniel, and had advertised a reward of two guineas to the finder, at length heard of the adventure, and went to reclaim his dog. "You see, sir," said the keeper, "it would be a great pity to part such loving friends; however, if you insist upon your property, you must be pleased to take the dog yourself; it is a task that I would not engage in for five hundred guineas." The gentleman became very angry, but finally chose to

acquiesce rather than have a personal dispute with the lion.

6. As one of the spectators had a curiosity to see the two friends eat together, he sent for twenty pounds of beef, which was accordingly cut in pieces and given into the cage; when immediately the little brute, whose appetite happened to be eager at the time, was desirous of making a monopoly of the whole, and putting his paws upon the meat, and growling and barking, he audaciously flew in the face of the lion. But the generous creature, instead of being offended with his impudent companion, started back and seemed terrified at the fury of his attack, nor attempted to taste a morsel till his favourite had tacitly given permission.

7. When they were both gorged, the lion stretched and turned himself, and lay down in a posture evidently intended for repose; but this his sportive companion would not permit. He frisked and gambolled about him, barked at him, would now serape and tear at his head with his claws, and again seize him by the ear and bite and pull, while the noble beast appeared affected by no other sentiment save that of pleasure and complaisance.

But let us proceed to the tragic catastrophe of this extraordinary story,—a story still known to many, as handed down by tradition from father to son.

8. In about twelve months the little spaniel sickened and died, and left his loving patron the most desolate of creatures. For a time the lion did not appear to conceive otherwise than that his favourite was asleep. He would continue to smell at him, and then would stir him with his nose, and turn him over with his paw; but finding that all his efforts to awake him were vain, he would traverse his cage from end to end at a swift and uneasy pace, then stop, and look down upon him with a fixed and drooping regard; and again lift his head on high, and open his horrible throat, and utter a prolonged roar as of distant thunder for several minutes together.

9. They attempted, but in vain, to convey the carcass

from him; he watched it perpetually, and would suffer nothing to touch it. The keeper then endeavoured to tempt him with a variety of victuals, but he turned with loathing from all that was offered. They then put several living dogs into his cage, and these he instantly tore piece-meal, but left their limbs on the floor. His passion being thus inflamed, he would dart his fangs into the boards, and pluck away large splinters, and again grapple at the bars of his cage, and seem enraged at being restrained from tearing the world to pieces. Again, as if quite spent, he would stretch himself by the remains of his beloved associate, and gather him in with his paws, and put him to his bosom, and then utter suppressed roars of such terrible melancholy as seemed to threaten all around, for the loss of his little playfellow, the only friend, the only companion that he had upon earth.

10. For five days he thus languished and gradually declined, without taking any sustenance, or admitting any comfort, till, one morning, he was found dead, with his head lovingly reclined on the carcass of his little friend. They were both interred together, and their grave plentifully watered by the tears of the keeper and his lamenting family.

11. When our friends were on their way from the Tower to their lodgings, "Sir," said a boy, "what we have just seen reminds me of the opinion held by Peter Patience, that one who is fearless cannot be provoked. You saw how that little teasing petulant wretch had the insolence to fly in the face of his benefactor, without offending him or exciting in him any kind of resentment." "True," said the father of this boy, "for the lion was sensible that his testy companion was little and powerless, and depended upon him, and had confidence in his clemency; and therefore the lion loved him with all his faults."

## 8.—The Dog and the Water Lily : No Fable.

## 1.

The noon was shady, and soft airs  
Swept Ouse's silent tide,  
When, 'scaped from literary cares,  
I wandered on his side.

## 2.

My spaniel, prettiest of his race,  
And high in pedigree,  
(Two nymphs adorned with every grace  
That spaniel found for me),

## 3.

Now wantoned lost in flags and reeds,  
Now starting into sight,  
Pursued the swallow o'er the meads,  
With scarce a slower flight.

## 4.

It was the time when Ouse displayed  
His lilies newly-blown ;  
Their beauties I intent surveyed,  
And one I wished my own.

## 5.

With eane extended far I sought  
To steer it close to land ;  
But still the prize, though nearly caught,  
Escaped my eager hand.

## 6.

Beau marked my unsuccessful pains  
With fixed, considerate face,  
And puzzling set his puppy brains  
To comprehend the case.

## 7.

But with a chirrup clear and strong,  
Dispersing all his dream,  
I thence withdrew, and followed long  
The windings of the stream.

## 8.

My ramble ended, I returned ;  
Beau trotting far before,  
The floating wreath again discerned,  
And plunging left the shore.

## 9.

I saw him, with that lily cropped,  
Impatient swim to meet  
My quick approach, and soon he dropped  
The treasure at my feet.

## 10.

Charmed with the sight, "The world," I cried,  
"Shall hear of this thy deed :  
My dog shall mortify the pride  
Of man's superior breed.

## 11.

"But chief myself I will enjoin,  
Awake at duty's call,  
To show a love as prompt as thine  
To Him who gives me all." COWPER.

### 9.—The Wrestler and his Pupil.

1. A certain man had reached perfection in the art of wrestling. He knew three hundred and sixty sleights of hand in this art, and every day he used some different device. He gave lessons in wrestling to some young men of the city, and was so much pleased with one of his pupils, that he taught him three hundred and fifty-nine throws. He taught him, in fact, all the throws that he knew save one, and this he withheld.

2. The pupil was so perfect in skill and strength that no one could withstand him, till he at length boasted before the sultan that he allowed the superiority of his master over him only out of respect to his years, and because he had been his instructor. He boasted that he was not really inferior to his master in strength, but quite on a par with him.

3. The king was displeased at the want of respect shown by the younger man for his teacher, and he did not believe in his superiority. So he commanded them to wrestle in his presence. A vast arena was selected. The great nobles and ministers of the king attended.

4. The youth, as soon as he entered the arena, fell upon his teacher with a shock that, had his adversary been a mountain of iron, would have upturned it from its base. The master, perceiving that the young man was his superior in strength, fastened on him with that curious grip which he had kept concealed from him.

5. The youth did not know how to foil the effects of this new stroke. The older man lifted him up with both hands from the ground, raised him above his head, and dashed him to the ground. A shout of applause arose from the multitude.

6. The king commanded that a robe of honour and a reward should be bestowed on the master; but he heaped reproaches on the youth, saying, "Thou hast presumed to combat with him who educated thee, and thou hast

failed." He replied, "Sir! my master overcame me, not by superiority of strength or power, but by a small point in the art of wrestling which he withheld from me. By this trifle he has to-day gained the victory over me."

7. The master then said:—"I reserved that last point for such a day as this; for the sages have said, 'Give not thy friend so much power that, if one day he should become thy foe, thou mayest not be able to resist him.'"

*Gulistan.*

### 10.—The Rat with a Bell.

1. A large old house was so much infested with rats, that nothing could be made safe from their secret attacks. They scaled the walls and nibbled at fitches of bacon, though these were hung as high as the ceiling. Shelves hung against the wall gave no protection to the cheese and pastry. By mining through the wall they found their way into the storeroom, and plundered it of jams and sweetmeats. They gnawed through cupboards, undermined floors, and ran races behind the wainscots.

2. The cats could not get at them. The rats were too cunning and too well fed to eat the poisoned food laid for them; and only now and then a few heedless stragglers were caught by traps. One of these, however, was once caught alive, and the master of the house determined to make this the occasion for trying a new plan. This was to fasten a collar with a small bell about the prisoner's neck and then to turn him loose again.

3. Overjoyed at recovering his liberty, the rat ran into the nearest hole, and went in search of his companions. They heard, at a distance, the bell tinkling through the dark passages; and, suspecting that some enemy had got among them, away they scoured, some one way and some another.

4. The bell-bearer pursued; and soon, guessing the cause of their flight, he was greatly amused by it. When-

ever he approached, it was all hurry-scurry, and not a tail of one of them was to be seen. He chased his old friends from hole to hole, from room to room, laughing all the while at their fears and increasing them by all the means in his power. Presently he had the whole house to himself. "That's right," quoth he, "the fewer companions, the better cheer." So he revelled alone among the good things, and stuffed till he could hardly walk.

5. For two or three days this course of life went on very pleasantly. He ate and ate, and played the bugbear to perfection. At length he grew tired of his lonely condition, and longed to mix with his companions again upon the former footing. But the difficulty was how to get rid of his bell. He pulled and tugged with his fore feet, and almost tore the skin off his neck in the attempt, but all in vain. The bell was now his plague and torment. He wandered from room to room earnestly desiring to make himself known to one of his companions; but they all kept out of his reach. At last, as he was moping about disconsolate, he fell in puss's way, and was devoured in an instant.

6. He who is raised so much above his fellow-creatures as to be the object of their terror, must suffer for it in losing all the comforts of society. He is a solitary being in the midst of crowds. He keeps them at a distance, and they equally shun him.

Dread and affection cannot exist together.

## 11.—Filial Love.

### § 1. ALEXANDER THE GREAT AND HIS MOTHER.

1. Olympias, mother of Alexander the Great, was a woman of ambitious disposition, and occasioned much trouble to her son. Nevertheless, when pursuing his conquests in Asia, he sent many splendid presents out of the



spoils which he had taken as tokens of his affection. He only begged that she would not meddle with state affairs during his absence from Macedonia, but allow his kingdom to be managed peaceably by his governor, Antipater.

2. When she sent him a sharp reply to this request, he bore it submissively and did not use sharp language in return. On one occasion, when she had been unusually troublesome, Antipater sent him letters, complaining of her in very grievous terms. Alexander only said, "Antipater doth not know that one single tear of my mother is able to blot out six hundred of his epistles."

## § 2. NAPOLEON AND THE YOUNG ENGLISH SAILOR.

### 1.

I love contemplating—apart  
From all his homicidal glory—  
The traits that soften to our heart  
Napoleon's story.

### 2.

'Twas when his banners at Boulogne  
Arm'd in our island every freeman,  
His navy chanced to capture one  
Poor British seaman.

### 3.

They suffer'd him, I know not how,  
Unprison'd on the shore to roam;  
And aye was bent his youthful brow  
On England's home.

### 4.

His eye, methinks, pursued the flight  
Of birds to Britain halfway over  
With envy—*they* could reach the white,  
Dear cliffs of Dover

## 5.

A stormy midnight watch, he thought,  
Than this sojourn would have been dearer,  
If but the storm his vessel brought  
To England nearer.

## 6.

At last, when care half banish'd sleep,  
He saw one morning, dreaming, doting,  
An empty hogshead from the deep  
Come shoreward floating.

## 7.

He hid it in a cave and wrought  
The livelong day, laborious, lurking,  
Until he launch'd a tiny boat,  
By mighty working.

## 8.

Heaven help us ! 'twas a thing beyond  
Description wretched ; such a wherry  
Perhaps ne'er ventured on a pond,  
Or cross'd a ferry.

## 9.

For ploughing in the salt sea field,  
It would have made the boldest shudder ;  
Untarr'd, uncompass'd, and unkeel'd,—  
No sail—no rudder.

## 10.

From neighb'ring woods he interlaced  
His sorry skiff with wattled willows ;  
And thus equipp'd he would have pass'd  
The foaming billows.

## 11.

But Frenchmen caught him on the beach,  
 His little Argo (sorely jeering ;)  
 Till tidings of him chanced to reach  
 Napoleon's hearing.

## 12.

With folded arms Napoleon stood,  
 { Serene alike in peace and danger, }  
 And in his wonted attitude }  
 Address'd the stranger :

## 13.

"Rash man, that would'st yon Channel pass  
 On twigs and staves so rudely fashion'd,  
 Thy heart with some sweet British lass  
 Must be impassion'd."

## 14.

"I have no sweetheart," said the lad ;  
 "But—absent long from one another,—  
 Great was the longing that I had  
 To see my mother."

## 15.

"And so thou shalt," Napoleon said ;  
 "Ye've both my favour fairly won,  
 A noble mother must have bred  
 So brave a son."

## 16.

He gave the tar a piece of gold,  
 And with a flag of truce commanded  
 He should be shipp'd to England Old,  
 And safely landed.

## 17.

Our sailor oft could scanty shift  
To find a dinner plain and hearty ;  
But never changed the coin and gift  
Of Buonaparté.

CAMPBELL.

## 12.—The Discovery of Vaccination.

1. The difficulties encountered by Dr. Jenner in promulgating and establishing his discovery of vaccination as a preventive of small-pox were very great. Many before him had witnessed the cow-pox, and had heard of the report current among the milkmaids that whoever had taken that disease was secure against small-pox. It was a trifling, vulgar rumour, supposed to have no significance whatever ; and no one had thought it worthy of investigation, until it was accidentally brought under the notice of Jenner.

2. He was a youth, pursuing his studies like any ordinary student at a medical school, when his attention was arrested by a country girl who came to a chemist's shop for advice. The small-pox was mentioned, when the girl said, "I can't take that disease, for I have had the cow-pox." The observation immediately riveted Jenner's attention, and he forthwith set about inquiring and making observations on the subject. His professional friends, to whom he mentioned his views as to the preventive virtues of cow-pox, laughed at him, and even threatened to expel him from their society if he persisted in harassing them with the subject.

3. He went back to the country to practise his profession and, make experiments, which he continued to pursue for a period of twenty years. His faith in his discovery was so implicit that he vaccinated his own son on three several occasions. At length he published his views in a quarto of about seventy pages, in which he gave

the details of twenty-three cases of successful vaccination of individuals, to whom it was found afterwards impossible to communicate the small-pox either by contagion or inoculation. It was in 1798 A.D. that this treatise was published, though he had been working out his ideas since the year 1775, when they had begun to assume a definite form.

4. How was the discovery received? First with indifference, and then with active hostility. Jenner proceeded to London to exhibit to the profession the process of vaccination and its results; but not a single medical man could be induced to make trial of it, and after fruitlessly waiting for nearly three months, he returned to his native village.

5. He was even caricatured and abused for his attempt to "bestialise" his species by the introduction into their systems of diseased matter from the cow's udder. Vaccination was denounced by the clergy as "diabolical." It was averred that vaccinated children became "ox-faced," that abscesses broke out to indicate "sprouting horns," and that the countenance was gradually "transmuted into the visage of a cow, the voice into the bellowing of bulls."

6. Vaccination, however, was a truth, and truth will always prevail in the end. Notwithstanding the violence of the opposition, belief in vaccination spread slowly, but surely. In one village, where a gentleman tried to introduce the practice, the first persons who permitted themselves to be vaccinated were absolutely pelted and driven into their houses if they appeared out of doors. Two ladies of title—Lady Duncree and the Countess of Berkeley, to their honour be it remembered—had the courage to vaccinate their children; and the prejudices of the day were at once broken through. The medical profession gradually came round, and there were several who even sought to rob Dr. Jenner of the merit of the discovery when its importance came to be recognised. Jenner's cause at last triumphed, and he was publicly honoured and rewarded.

7. In his prosperity he was as modest as he had been in his obscurity. He was invited to settle in London, and

told that he might command a practice of £10,000 a year. But his answer was, "No! In the morning of my days I sought the sequestered and lowly paths of life—the valleys, and not the mountains,—and now, in the evening of my days, it is not meet for me to hold myself up as an object for fortune and for fame." During Jenner's own lifetime the practice of vaccination became adopted all over the civilised world; and when he died, his title as a benefactor of his kind was recognised far and wide. Cuvier has said, "If vaccine were the only discovery of the epoch, it would serve to render it illustrious for ever; yet it knocked twenty times in vain at the doors of the Academies.")

8. Jenner is one of whom the race may be proud. He was not only an inventor and a man of genius, but one who conquered the prejudices and ignorance of his contemporaries, refused greatness and riches when they were offered him, and found his greatest satisfaction in the thought that he had made a discovery which has ever since saved Europe from the scourge of small-pox. India might be saved from the same scourge, if her people would undergo the same treatment, and if the treatment were always at hand.

SMILES (*adapted*).

### 13.—Alice Fell; or Poverty.

#### 1.

The postboy drove with fierce career,  
For threatening clouds the moon had drowned;  
When, as we hurried on, my ear  
Was smitten with a startling sound.

#### 2.

As if the wind blew many ways,  
I heard the sound—and more and more  
It seemed to follow with the chaise,  
And still I heard it as before.

## 3.

At length I to the boy called out ;  
He stopped his horses at the word ;  
But neither cry, nor voice, nor shout,  
Nor aught else like it, could be heard.

## 4.

The boy then smacked his whip, and fast  
The horses scampered through the rain ;  
But hearing soon upon the blast  
The cry, I bade him halt again.

## 5.

Forthwith alighting on the ground,  
"Whence comes," said I, "this piteous moan ?  
And there a little girl I found,  
Sitting behind the chaise, alone.

## 6.

"My cloak !" no other word she spake,  
But loud and bitterly she wept,  
As if her innocent heart would break ;  
And down from off her seat she leapt.

## 7.

"What ails you, child ?" She sobbed  
"Look here !"  
I saw it in the wheel entangled,  
A weather-beaten rag as e'er  
From any garden scarecrow dangled.

## 8.

There twisted between nave and spoke,  
It hung, nor could at once be freed ;  
But our joint pains unloosed the cloak,  
A miserable rag indeed !

## 9.

"And whither are you going, child,  
To-night along these lonesome ways?"  
"To Durham," answered she, half wild—  
"Then come with me into the chaise."

## 10.

Insensible to all relief  
Sat the poor girl, and forth did send  
Sob after sob, as if her grief  
Could never, never have an end.

## 11.

"My child, in Durham do you dwell?"  
She checked herself in her distress,  
And said, "My name is Alice Fell;  
I'm fatherless and motherless.

## 12.

"And I to Durham, sir, belong."  
Again, as if the thought would choke  
Her very heart, her grief grew strong;  
And all was for her tattered cloak!

## 13.

The chaise drove on; our journey's end  
Was nigh; and sitting by my side,  
As if she had lost her only friend,  
She wept, nor would be pacified.

## 14.

Up to the tavern door we post;  
Of Alice and her grief I told;  
And I gave money to the host,  
To buy a new cloak for the old.



## 15.

“And let it be of duffil gray,  
 As warm a cloak as man can sell !”  
 Proud creature was she the next day,  
 The little orphan, Alice Fell !

WORDSWORTH.

## 14.—On the Treatment of Inferiors.

## § 1. THE GENTLEMAN OR MAN OF BREEDING.

1. There are many tests by which a gentleman may be known ; but there is one that never fails. How does he *exercise power* over those subordinate to him ? How does he conduct himself towards women and children ? How does the officer treat his men, the employer his servants, the master his pupils, and a man in any other station those who are weaker than himself ?

2. The discretion, forbearance, and kindness with which power in such cases is used may indeed be regarded as the crucial test of gentlemanly character. When La Motte was one day passing through a crowd, he accidentally trod upon the foot of a young fellow, who forthwith struck him on the face. “Ah, sire,” said La Motte, “you will surely be sorry for what you have done when you know that *I am blind*.”

3. He who bullies those who are not in a position to resist may be a snob, but cannot be a gentleman. He who tyrannises over the weak and helpless may be a coward, but no true man. (The tyrant, it has been said, is but a slave turned inside out.) Strength, with the consciousness of strength, in a right-hearted man, imparts a nobleness to his character ; but he will be most careful how he uses it ;

“’Tis excellent

To have a giant’s strength ; but it’s tyrannous  
 To use it like a giant.”

4. Gentleness is indeed the best test of gentlemanliness. A consideration for the feelings of others, for his inferiors and dependants as well as his equals, and respect for their self-respect, will pervade the true gentleman's whole conduct. He will rather himself suffer a small injury than by an uncharitable construction of another's behaviour incur the risk of committing a great wrong. He will be forbearing to the weaknesses, the failings, and the errors of those whose advantages in life have not been equal to his own. He will be merciful even to his beast. He will not boast of his wealth, or his strength, or his gifts, or of his superior position in life. He will not be puffed up by success, or unduly depressed by failure. He will not obtrude his views on others, but bespeak his mind freely when his opinion is asked. He will not confer favours with a patronising air. Sir Walter Scott once said of Lord Lothian, "He is a man from whom one may receive a favour without being made to repent it, and that's saying a great deal in these days."

5. Lord Chatham has said that the gentleman is characterised by his sacrifice of self for the benefit of others in the little daily occurrences of life. In illustration of this we may cite the anecdote of the gallant Sir Ralph Abercromby, of whom it is related, that when mortally wounded in the battle of Aboukir, he was carried on a litter on board one of the ships; and to ease his pain, a soldier's blanket was placed under his head, from which he experienced considerable relief. He asked what it was. "It's only a soldier's blanket," was the reply. "Whose blanket is it?" said he, half lifting himself up. "Only one of the men's." "I wish to know the name of the man whose blanket this is." "It is Duncan Roy's, of the 42nd, Sir Ralph." "Then see that Duncan Roy gets his blanket back again this very night." Even to ease his dying agony the general would not deprive the private soldier of his blanket for one night. The incident is as good in its way as that of the dying Sidney handing his cup of water to the private soldier on the field of Zutphen.

6. The quaint old Fuller sums up in a few words the character of the true gentleman in describing that of the great admiral, Sir Francis Drake:—"Chaste in his life, just in his dealings, true of his word, merciful to those that were under him, and hating nothing so much as idleness; in matters of especial moment he was never wont to rely on other men's care, howsoever trusty or skilful they might seem to be; but always contemning danger and refusing no toil, he was wont himself to be at every turn where courage, skill, or industry was to be employed."

SMILES (*adapted*).

## § 2. UNDUE RESERVE OF A MASTER REBUKED.

When Mr. Anson, the traveller, arrived home from the East, the servant who had accompanied him came to ask his dismissal. On the reason being demanded, he said he had nothing to complain of, but that, through all their common toils and dangers, his master had never addressed a word to him but in the way of command.

## 15.—Lost Opportunities.

### § 1. SAYINGS AND PRECEPTS.

1. A poor man waited a thousand years before the gate of Paradise; then while he snatched one little nap, the door opened and shut.

*Persian.*

2. Four things cannot be brought back:—A word spoken, an arrow discharged, a divine decree, and a past opportunity.

*Arabic.*

3. It is useless to dam the tank after the water has escaped.

*Sanskrit.*

4. The stream that has passed down does not come back to its former channel.

*Persian.*

5. If the clouds be full of rain, they empty themselves upon the earth : and if the tree fall toward the south, or toward the north, in the place where it falleth, there shall it lie.

*Eccles. xi. 3.*

6. No good act should be delayed which can be performed to-day ; for Death does not consider whether the man he approaches has done his duty or not. Death knows no attachment nor antipathy ; it owns neither friend nor foe.

*Agni Purán.*

## § 2. THE PARABLE OF THE TEN VIRGINS.

Ten virgins took their lamps, and went forth to meet the bridegroom. Five of them were wise, and five foolish. They that were foolish took their lamps, but took no oil with them. The wise took oil in their vessels with their lamps.

While the bridegroom tarried, they all slumbered and slept. And at midnight there was a cry made, Behold the bridegroom cometh ; go ye out to meet him. And the bridegroom came, and they that were ready went in with him to the marriage.

Afterwards came also the other virgins, saying :—Lord, Lord, open to us. But he answered and said, Verily I say unto you, I know you not.

Watch ye, therefore, and pray ; for ye know neither the day nor the hour when the judge of men cometh.

*New Testament.*

## § 3. TOO LATE.

Late, late, so late ! and dark the night and chill !  
Late, late, so late ! but we can enter still.  
Too late, too late ! ye cannot enter now.

No light had we : for that we do repent ;  
And learning this, the bridegroom will relent.  
Too late, too late ! ye cannot enter now.

No light : so late ! and dark and chill the night !  
O let us in, that we may find the light !  
Too late, too late : ye cannot enter now.

Have we not heard the bridegroom is so sweet ?  
O let us in, tho' late, to kiss his feet !  
No, no, too late ! ye cannot enter now.

TENNYSON.

## 16.—The Whale.

### § 1. THE WHALE IN GENERAL.

1. The whale is the largest animal that has ever yet been discovered. It is so large that perhaps you have never seen a room big enough to hold one. The length of some whales has been found to exceed 90 feet ; but this is exceptional. The ordinary length of a full-grown whale is 70 or 80 feet.

2. We commonly speak of the whale as a fish ; but this is a mistake. The whale is not a fish, for two reasons :—*firstly*, fish can breathe for any length of time under water ; but whales are compelled to come up after a short time to take breath ; *secondly*, fish are produced from spawn or eggs ; but whales come into the world alive, and are suckled by the mother. The mother whale, when she wishes to give milk to her cub, rolls herself a little to one side, so that the cub's head may not be under water at the time of sucking.

3. There are two more points of difference between a whale and a fish. The blood of a fish is cold ; but the blood of a whale is warm, and this enables it to live in very cold seas. Again, the fins of a fish are on the sides of its body and behind the gills ; but the whale has no gills and no fins. What look like fins are placed nearer the eye and almost under the stomach instead of at the sides.

What we call the fin of a whale is in reality a leg, which has been transformed into a fin-like shape to suit aquatic life.

4. Although the whale is not a fish, yet it cannot live on land, but only in water. Why is this? For two reasons:—*firstly*, because it feeds only on fish; and, *secondly*, because it has no legs and cannot move on land. If by any chance it gets into shallow water and is cast upon the shore, it cannot make its way back to its own element, and dies a miserable death of hunger.

5. It moves itself in water chiefly, if not entirely, by means of its enormous tail. The so-called fins help it to keep its balance in the water and to take hold of its young, whenever the mother whale is anxious for the safety of her cub.

6. When the whale wishes to take food, it opens its jaws wide and dives down into the water through shoals of shrimps, crabs, lobsters, and any other small fish that may come in its way. Consequently a stream of water rushes into its mouth, and a multitude of small fish are carried into its immense jaws by the current. The water flows out again, through the holes in the sides of its mouth; but the fish are held firmly and remain.

7. The swallow or gullet of the whale is seldom more than four inches in width, so it rejects all but the smaller fish. To feed such a huge body an immense number of little fish must be devoured every day.

8. The length of the whale's head and mouth is very great, and the part above the jaw is much thicker than the part below. The upper part has two holes at the top, through which the whale spouts out water; and it does this either for sport, or when it has more water in its mouth than it desires to keep. These openings are called blow-holes, and the ejection of water is called spouting. The spoutings are made with great violence, and can be heard at some distance. The water is often thrown up to the height of 20 feet.

9. There is one kind of whale which has no teeth;

but instead of teeth it has a hard and tough substance in its jaws which is called whalebone.

10. The eyes of the whale are no bigger than those of an ox. They are placed at a very great distance apart; and each eye is fixed a little above the back part of the jaw.

11. The colour of the whale varies from black to white in different parts. It is black along the upper part of its body, in the so-called fins, and the tail; gray at those parts where the fins and the tail are united with the trunk; and white, or nearly white, along the stomach and lower jaw.

12. The whale is generally seen floating like a huge boat on the surface of the sea, as if it were asleep. But its power of hearing is quick; and if it is suddenly startled, it dives rapidly down, sometimes to a depth of a quarter of a mile, and at the rate of seven or eight miles an hour. Its smooth and oily skin, not being covered with hair, helps it to glide rapidly through the water.

13. But the whale cannot stay under water for any length of time. It seldom remains there for less than ten minutes, or for more than thirty. When it comes up again to take breath, it begins to blow or spout forth water through the blow-holes. It does this eight or nine times, and it generally remains two or three minutes on the surface of the water, taking breath before it goes down again.

## § 2. WHALE-FISHING.

1. If the whale were really a fish, and not a beast that gives suck to its young, it would be impossible to hunt it; for in that case it could remain under water as long as it liked, and no one could come near it. Whale-fishing is a peculiar art, and no other aquatic animals are caught or hunted in the same way.

2. Men go out in boats, each man being armed with a harpoon—a kind of short iron spear. The head of the

harpoon is so shaped that when it has once entered the flesh of the whale, it cannot slip out again of itself, or be easily pulled out.

3. The men in the boats hurl their harpoons through the air against the whale's body; for they dare not go close up to the monster. The whale, finding itself thus attacked, dives rapidly down into the water; but it is forced to come up again, within half an hour or sooner, to take breath. Whenever it reascends to the surface, more and more harpoons are hurled against it, and the animal goes on diving again and again in order to avoid its pursuers, until at last it dies partly from drowning and partly from loss of blood.

4. The fact that men can destroy such a monster shows the superiority of human skill and wisdom over mere bulk and brute force. The only weapon of defence with which nature has provided the whale is its enormous tail. With one blow of the tail boats are upset, and with another the men who are thrown into the water are often stunned and drowned.

### § 3. THE KINDS OF WHALES.

1. There are two main kinds or varieties of whale: one is the Northern or Greenland whale, which lives in the Arctic Ocean; the other is the Southern or Sperm whale, which frequents the warmer seas of the south. The Northern whale is much hunted off the islands of Nova Zembla and Spitzbergen to the north of Asia.

2. The points of difference between these two species are the following:—

(a) The head of the Northern whale is about one-fifth part of the total length of its body; that of the Southern whale is about one-third.

(b) The Northern whale has no teeth in its jaw, but only whalebone. The Southern whale has rows of teeth besides whalebone, and some of these teeth are eight or nine inches long.



(c) The Southern whale produces the substance (spermaceti), after which it is called; and another substance (ambergris). The Northern species produces neither of these.

(d) The Northern whale is often found alone, and is inclined to be a solitary animal, like the bear or the spider. The Southern whale is gregarious, that is, it lives in herds or societies consisting of several hundreds of members.

#### § 4. THE USES OF THE WHALE.

1. When the whale is dead, its body floats on the water, and the men either tow it to the side of the ship or drag it ashore, where they cut it up for various uses. And now you will ask, What are these uses? Why do men go through so much trouble and danger in order to hunt these monstrous animals? There are five uses in the whale, and these will now be explained to you one by one.

2. *First*, the oil, usually called train oil. The tongue of the animal consists of a fatty substance, out of which men frequently extract six barrels of oil. But the chief source of oil is the blubber. This, too, is a fatty substance. It lies under the skin throughout the whole surface of its immense body, forming a layer of fat between the skin and the flesh; and from this, if the whale is a large one, men get as much as 200 barrels of oil. The oil is extracted from the tongue and blubber by boiling.

3. *Second*, the flesh of the whale which lies under the blubber is eaten by those tribes of men who live on or near the Arctic Sea. The flesh is red and coarse; but men of the Arctic tribes are glad to get the carcass of a whale, because they can cut slices of meat off it whenever other supplies of food run short. On account of the excessive cold of the Arctic circle the flesh does not become putrid, but remains sound and fresh for many months in succession. The same tribes also drink the oil for the sake of warming their blood in that extremely cold climate.

4. *Third*, the whalebone,—a tough and elastic substance which lines the jaws of both kinds of whale. Oil can be got from many other sources, but whalebone can be got only from the whale. We call it tough, because, however much we may bend it backwards or forwards, we cannot break it in two; and we call it elastic, because when it is bent it does not remain bent, but springs back again, like steel or India-rubber, to its former place. Whalebone is used for making the stretchers of umbrellas, riding-whips, etc.

5. *Fourth*, spermaceti. This is found in two cavities in the brain, and so long as the animal is still alive or not yet cold with the cold of death, it remains in a liquid state. After the animal is killed and towed to the side of the ship, the sailors descend from the ship, and standing on its skull cut a broad, deep hole in it. They then bale out the liquid as fast as they can in buckets, as if they were baling water out of a tank.

6. The spermaceti, when it is first exposed to the air, looks like liquid oil. But after a few hours a thick, fatty substance, something like wax, detaches itself from the oil, and this by degrees becomes firm and solid enough to be taken out and put into a separate vessel. This substance is spermaceti, and is used for making candles. This is found only in the sperm whale, as was mentioned above. Twenty-four barrels of spermaceti, besides a hundred barrels of oil, have been taken from the head of a single whale.

7. *Fifth*, ambergris. This is a hard, but light substance, and is found floating on the surface of the Indian Ocean and other tropical seas. It is melted over a very hot fire, and in this state is much used as a perfume or scent. It long remained a secret where this substance came from; but it is now known for certain that it is formed in the entrails of the sperm whale.

8. The native tribes inhabiting the Fiji and Tonga Islands, and other islands of Polynesia, set an immense value on the teeth of a spermaceti whale. A single tooth

is considered a fit present for one king to make to another, or a fit offering to be laid up in a temple and dedicated to an idol.

### § 5. LINES ON THE WHALE.

Plunging away through the deep, deep sea,  
The huge whale sports in his kingly glee.  
Down to the depths sometimes he will go,  
Then up to the surface again, to blow.  
There is danger and dread in catching the whale,  
For he'll swamp a boat with a shake of his tail ;  
And then with a plunge away goes he,  
Bounding along through the deep, deep sea.  
The whale ! the whale ! the mighty and free,  
Is the monarch and pride of the deep, deep sea !

### 17.—Solon and Cræsus.

Call no man happy till you have seen his end.

1. When many new conquests had been added to the Lydian empire, and the prosperity of Cræsus, the king, had reached its climax, there came to him, one after another, all the sages of Greece then living, and among them Solon, the Athenian. Solon was then on his travels, having left Athens for an intended absence of ten years, under the pretence of wishing to see the world, but really to avoid being forced to repeal any of the laws which, at the request of the Athenians, he had made for them. Without his sanction the Athenians could not repeal any of the laws he had given them, as they had bound themselves under a heavy curse to be governed for ten years at least by whatever laws he might impose for their benefit.

2. On this account, as well as from a desire to see new countries, Solon set out upon his travels, in the course of which he first went to the court of Amasis, the king of Egypt, and then visited Sardis, the chief city of Lydia, of

which Cræsus was then king. Cræsus received him with every mark of respect, and gave him quarters in the royal palace. On the third or fourth day after Solon's arrival he bade his servants conduct the Athenian stranger over his treasures, and show him all the greatness and magnificence of his court.

3. When Solon had seen all this, and, so far as time allowed, had carefully examined everything, Cræsus addressed him as follows:—"Stranger of Athens, we have heard much of thy wisdom, and of the journeys which thou hast been taking through many lands from a love of knowledge and a desire to see the world. I am led, therefore, to inquire of thee whom, of all the men that thou hast seen in thy travels, thou deemest the most happy." This he asked, because he believed himself to be the happiest of mortals, and felt sure that Solon would think so too. But Solon answered him without flattery, and according to his real convictions:—"I consider Tellus of Athens, sir, the happiest of mortals."

4. Full of astonishment at this reply, Cræsus demanded of him in rather a sharp tone:—"And wherefore, O stranger of Athens, dost thou deem Tellus the happiest of men?" To which Solon replied,—“Firstly, because during his life his country was very prosperous, and he himself had sons both handsome and good, and he lived to see children born to each of them, and these children all grown up; and, secondly, because, after a life spent in a way which we men of Athens regard as happy, his end was surpassingly glorious. In a battle that was being fought between the Athenians and their neighbours near Eleusis, he came to the assistance of his fellow-citizens, routed the foe, and died most gallantly upon the field of battle. The Athenians gave him a public funeral on the spot where he fell, and paid him the highest honours.”

5. Thus did Solon instruct the King of Lydia by the example of a private man, enumerating the manifold particulars in which his happiness lay. When he had ended, Cræsus asked him to state who, after Tellus, appeared to

him to be the happiest of men, expecting that he himself would at least be given the second place.

6. "Cleobis and Bito," Solon answered. "These two men were citizens of Argos. Their means were enough for their wants; and they were endowed with so much bodily strength that they both gained prizes at the public games. The following tale is told of them:—A great festival was about to be held at Argos in honour of the goddess Juno; and to this their mother had to be taken in a car. Now it happened that the oxen, by which the car or chariot was to have been drawn, did not come home from the field by the expected time: so the youths, fearful of being too late, put the yoke on their own necks, and themselves drew the car in which their mother rode. Five and forty furlongs did they draw her, till they reached the door of the temple. This deed of theirs was witnessed and applauded by the whole assembly of worshippers. Their life soon after closed in the best possible way; and by this (as you will see), it was most clearly shown how much better death is than life. For while the Argive men stood thick around the car, extolling the vast strength of the youths, and while women extolled the mother who was blessed with such a pair of sons, the mother herself, overjoyed at what they had done and at the praises they had won, standing straight before the altar, prayed that Heaven would bestow on her two sons the highest blessing to which mortals could attain. Her prayer being ended, they offered a sacrifice on the altar and partook of the holy banquet, after which they fell asleep in the temple. From this sleep they never woke again, but so passed away from the earth. The Argives, regarding them as among the best of men, caused statues to be made in their honour, and these statues they gave to the shrine at Delphi."

7. Solon had scarcely finished talking, before Cræsus broke in angrily, and said:—"What! stranger of Athens, is *my* happiness, then, so utterly despised by thee, that thou canst not put me even on a level with private men,—common people of small cities?"

8. "Oh! Cræsus," replied the other, "I see indeed that thou art wonderfully rich and the lord of many nations, but with respect to that whereon thou questionest me, I have no answer to give thee, until I know how thou wilt close thy life. For assuredly he who possesses abundant riches as thou dost, is not more happy than one who has sufficient for his daily needs, is whole of limb, a stranger to disease, free from misfortune, fortunate in his children, and comely in appearance. If, in addition to all this, he end his life well, he is of a truth the man of whom thou art in search, the man who may rightly be termed happy. Call him, however, until he dies, not happy, but prosperous. Scarcely, indeed, can any man unite in himself all the good things of life. As there is no country which contains within itself all that it needs, but every state, while it possesses some things, must be lacking in others, so no individual man is complete in every respect, but is always in need of something to make his happiness quite perfect. He who unites in himself the greatest number of blessings, and retaining these to the end of his days, dies peaceably at last,—that man alone, sir, is in my judgment entitled to bear the name of 'happy.' But above all things it behoves us to mark well the *end*; for God often gives men a gleam of happiness, and then plunges them into ruin."

9. Such was the speech that Solon addressed to Cræsus—a speech which Cræsus did not like, and which brought no presents and no honour to his visitor. The king witnessed his departure with much indifference; for he believed him to be an arrant fool, since he took no account of present good, but bade men always wait till they saw the end.

10. A few years after Solon's departure Sardis was taken by the Persians, and Cræsus himself fell into their hands, after having reigned for fourteen years in the highest prosperity, and suffered a siege of only fourteen days. The Persians, having made Cræsus prisoner, brought him before Cyrus, their king. By the orders of Cyrus a

vast pile of wood was raised, on the top of which Crœsus, laden with fetters, was placed, and with him fourteen of the sons of the Lydians. Plunged in the depths of woe, and expecting soon to be burnt, it then entered his mind that there was a divine warning in the words which had come to him from the lips of Solon, "Call no man happy till you see his end." When this thought smote him to the heart, he heaved a long sigh, and breaking the deep silence of his sorrow, he cried out with a loud voice, "Solon! Solon! Solon!"

11. Cyrus, hearing these sounds from his tent, sent some interpreters to inquire of Crœsus what he meant by calling out the name of Solon three times, and who this Solon was. They drew near and questioned him; but he held his peace, and for a long time made no answer, until at length, forced to say something, he exclaimed:—"Solon was a man whom I should like every monarch to converse with." Not knowing what he meant by this reply, the interpreters begged him to explain; and as they pressed for an answer, and became importunate, he at length told them that a few years ago Solon, an Athenian philosopher, visited Sardis and saw all his splendour, but made light of it; and that whatever Solon then said to him about the instability of fortune had turned out exactly as he warned him, although the warning did not concern him alone, but applied to all mankind alike, and especially to those who considered themselves happy. Meanwhile, as he was thus speaking, the pile was lighted, and the outer portion began to blaze.

12. Then Cyrus hearing from the interpreters what Crœsus had said, relented, bethinking himself that he, too, was a man, and that the person whom he was burning alive had once been as blessed by fortune as himself—being afraid, moreover, of retribution, and impressed with the thought that whatever is human is insecure. So he bade them quench the blazing fire as quickly as they could, and take down Crœsus and the other Lydians.

HERODOTUS, *Book I.*

## 18.—Proverbs that are Pernicious.

1. There are some popular proverbs that are apt to do a great deal of harm, because they can more easily be applied to a bad purpose than to a good one, and because the amount of truth which they contain is sometimes not so conspicuous as the falsehood.

2. "*When we are in Rome we must do as Romans do.*"—Whether we must or not depends on what the Romans do. If the people with whom we are thrown are accustomed to practise what is wrong, nothing can make it right to imitate them.

3. "*Might makes right.*"—This is the tyrant's motto. It ought not to be the rule among a civilised people. The inverted motto is much better,—"*Right makes might*"; which means that a sense of duty gives a man confidence to perform it.

4. "*Every man has his price.*"—This can only mean that any one using such a proverb believes himself and every one else to be dishonest. It is not true that every man can be bought. There are thousands whom no bribe can tempt, much less seduce. Their honour, truthfulness, and virtue are beyond price.

5. "*Charity begins at home.*"—This is only half a truth, as usually quoted. It is never a reason for not helping others. Charity should begin at home, but that is no reason why it should stop there.

6. "*Exchange is no robbery.*"—This is perhaps the most dangerous of all the proverbs that we have quoted so far; for we have known men take a better article and substitute a worse in its place, relying on the truth of this proverb.

7. "*Every man for himself, and God for all.*"—This is mere selfishness, and ought not to be used as a guide to conduct. It means that a man should think only of himself, and leave every one else in the lurch; although an



attempt is made to justify such conduct by bringing in the name of God. Another form of this proverb is, "Self's the man;" which is better than the one first quoted, because it does not seek to disguise its own ugliness.

8. "*It is hard for an empty sack to stand straight.*"—Since it is not merely hard, but impossible for an empty sack to stand upright, such a proverb implies that it is impossible for a poor man to be upright or honest; and thus it makes excuses for dishonesty, where no excuse ought to be admitted.

9. "*A sin concealed is half forgiven.*"—This implies that so long as a man's sin is hidden, or known only to the few who are bound to secrecy, he need not trouble himself with any fear about the consequences. There is a saying very like this proverb,—"*'Tis only daylight that makes sin*"; and there is a caste in India, in the districts about Jhansi, which acts up to this pernicious precept. The caste is called Sunauriya; they are Brahmans, whose hereditary mode of life consists in stealing by daylight, but who think it a crime to steal by night. For if they steal by daylight, and the daylight has not led to their being caught, they consider themselves innocent.

10. "*Draw the snake from its hole by another man's hand.*"—This means, expose some one else to a peril from which you shrink yourself; get all the profit that you can, but use some one else as a tool for the purpose, and take care that if any one is injured, the injury does not fall on yourself, but on him.

11. "*One must howl with the wolves.*"—Howl with the wolves, if you would not be hunted by them. Join in the general cry, however unjust it may be, lest you should place yourself on the weaker side and suffer with the innocent. Never raise your voice against any kind of evil, lest you should displease the men in power, but agree with everything they say or do, however wrong you may know it to be. This is the most cowardly precept in the whole list of proverbs; and yet there is none so often acted on in public as well as private life.

## 19.—The Loss of the "Royal George."

1.

Toll for the brave !

The brave that are no more !  
All sunk beneath the wave  
Fast by their native shore.

2.

Eight hundred of the brave,  
Whose courage well was tried,  
Had made the vessel heel,  
And laid her on her side.

3.

A land-breeze shook the shrouds,  
And she was overset ;  
Down went the *Royal George*,  
With all her crew complete.

4.

Toll for the brave !  
Brave Kempenfelt is gone ;  
His last sea-fight is fought,  
His work of glory done.

5.

It was not in the battle ;  
No tempest gave the shock ;  
She sprang no fatal leak,  
She ran upon no rock.

## 6.

His sword was in its sheath,  
His fingers held the pen,  
When Kempenfelt went down  
With twice four hundred men.

## 7.

Weigh the vessel up  
Once dreaded by our foes,  
And mingle with our cup  
The tear that England owes.

## 8.

X Her timbers yet are sound,  
And she may float again  
Full charged with England's thunder,  
And plough the distant main :

## 9.

X But Kempenfelt is gone,  
His victories are o'er ;  
And he and his eight hundred  
Shall plough the wave no more.

COWPER.

## 20.—Death of Aurangzeb : Remorse.

1. Aurangzeb's last military operation was a retreat to Ahmednagar, the nature of which may be conceived from his exhausted cattle and dispirited troops. All left the field in disorder and confusion, deafened with the incessant firing kept up by the marksmen, alarmed by the shouts and charges of the laneers, and every moment expecting a general attack to complete their dispersion and

destruction. Such, indeed, was the fate of a portion of the army; and it is a subject of pious exultation to the Mussulman historian, that the emperor himself escaped falling into the hands of the enemies whom he had once so much despised.

2. Ahmednagar, from whence, twenty years before, he had marched in so much power and splendour, elated with victory, received the remains of his ruined greatness, and was soon about to witness the close of his earthly career.

3. His health had of late become gradually impaired: he with difficulty overcame one illness that threatened his life; and although he continued to appear in public and to attend to business as before, his spirit at length began to sink under the accumulated burdens of defeat, anxiety, and disease. On reaching Ahmednagar, he said he had now come to the end of all his journeys; and from his last letters we perceive at once the extent of his bodily sufferings, the failure of his hopes in this world, and his dread of that to come. The remembrance of his father Sháh Jahán, whom he had imprisoned in his old age, seemed to haunt him more than ever. He nowhere expresses remorse for his share in that monarch's fate, but he shows by all his actions how much he fears that a like measure may be meted out to himself.

4. Prince Moazzim having proposed some arrangements which common prudence required at this crisis, he interprets them into a design to seize on the government while he was yet alive. When a letter from Prince Azam was read to him, entreating permission to come to Ahmednagar, on the ground that the air of Guzerat was ruining his health, he abruptly remarked:—"That is exactly the pretext I used to Sháh Jahán in his illness," and added that "no air was so unwholesome as the fumes of ambition"; and although afterwards prevailed on by Azam's importunity to allow him to pay him a visit on his way to his new government of Malwa, yet one of the last exertions of his authority was to compel the prince to proceed on his journey, and thus prevent his finding an excuse for remaining about the court.

5. These measures had long been completed; before he became sensible that his end was approaching. In this awful moment he wrote or dictated a letter to Prince Azam, in which his worldly counsels are mixed with broken sentences, giving utterance to the feelings of remorse and terror with which his soul was agitated, and which he closes with a sort of desperate resignation:—"Come what may, I have launched my vessel on the waves. . . . Farewell! farewell! farewell!"

6. He also wrote to his youngest, and latterly his favourite son, Kâmbakhsh. His letter, as to a much younger man, is more one of advice and admonition than that to Azam. It shows that he retained his favourite habits to the last. "Your courtiers," he says, "however deceitful, must not be ill-treated: it is necessary to gain your ends by gentleness and art," etc. Even in this letter his sense of his own situation breaks out from time to time. "Wherever I look I see nothing but the Almighty. I have committed many crimes, and I know not with what punishments I may be seized. . . . The agonies of death come upon me fast. . . . I am going. Whatever good or evil I have done, it was done for you." He breathed his last on 21st February, A.D. 1707, in the eighty-ninth year of his life, and fiftieth of his reign.

ELPHINSTONE (*adapted*).

## 21.—Extract from the Sermon on the Mount.

1. And seeing the multitudes, Jesus went up into a mountain; and when he had sat down, his disciples came unto him: and he opened his mouth and taught them saying,

Blessed are the poor in spirit: for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

Blessed are they that mourn: for they shall be comforted.

Blessed are the meek : for they shall inherit the earth.

Blessed are they that hunger and thirst after righteousness : for they shall be filled.

Blessed are the merciful : for they shall obtain mercy.

Blessed are the pure in heart : for they shall see God.

Blessed are the peacemakers : for they shall be called the children of God.

Blessed are they that are persecuted for righteousness' sake : for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

2. Blessed are ye, when men shall revile you, and persecute you, and shall say all manner of evil against you falsely, for my sake.

Rejoice, and be exceeding glad : for great is your reward in heaven ; for so persecuted they the prophets who were before you.

Ye are the salt of the earth : but if the salt hath lost its savour, wherewith shall it be salted ? It is thenceforth good for nothing, but to be cast out, and to be trodden under foot of men.

3. Ye are the light of the world. A city that is built on a hill cannot be hid. Neither do men light a candle and put it under a bushel, but on a candlestick ; and it giveth light unto all that are in the house. Even so let your light shine before men, that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father which is in heaven.

4. Think not that I am come to destroy the law, or the prophets : I am not come to destroy, but to fulfil. For verily I say unto you, Till heaven and earth pass away, one jot or one tittle shall in no wise pass away from the law, till all things be accomplished. Whosoever, therefore, shall break one of these least commandments, and shall teach men so, he shall be called the least in the kingdom of heaven : but whosoever shall do and teach them, he shall be called great in the kingdom of heaven. For I say unto you, that except your righteousness shall exceed the righteousness of the scribes and Pharisees, ye shall in no case enter into the kingdom of heaven.

5. Ye have heard that it was said by them of old time,

Thou shalt not kill: and whosoever shall kill shall be in danger of judgment: but I say unto you, That whosoever is angry with his brother without a cause shall be in danger of the judgment: and whosoever shall say to his brother, Raca, shall be in danger of the council: but whosoever shall say, Thou fool, shall be in danger of hell fire. If therefore thou art offering a gift at the altar, and there rememberest that thy brother hath ought against thee, leave there thy gift before the altar, and go thy way; first be reconciled to thy brother, and then come and offer the gift. Agree with thine adversary quickly, whilst thou art with him in the way; lest haply the adversary deliver thee to the judge, and the judge deliver thee to the officer, and thou be cast into prison. Verily I say unto thee, Thou shalt by no means come out thence, till thou hast paid the last farthing.

6. Ye have heard that it was said, Thou shalt not commit adultery: but I say unto you, That whosoever looketh on a woman to lust after her, hath committed adultery with her already in his heart. And if thy right eye causeth thee to stumble, pluck it out, and cast it from thee: for it is better for thee that one of thy members should perish, and not thy whole body be cast into hell. And if thy right hand offend thee, cut it off, and cast it from thee: for it is better for thee that one of thy members should perish, and not thy whole body go into hell. It was said also, Whosoever shall put away his wife, let him give her a writing of divorcement: but I say unto you, That whosoever shall put away his wife, saving for the cause of fornication, maketh her an adulteress; and whosoever shall marry her when she is put away, committeth adultery.

7. Again, ye have heard that it was said to them of old time, Thou shalt not forswear thyself, but shalt perform unto the Lord thine oath: but I say unto you, Swear not at all; neither by heaven; for it is God's throne: nor by the earth; for it is His footstool: neither by Jerusalem; for it is the city of the great King. Neither shalt thou

swear by thy head, because thou canst not make one hair white or black. But let your communication be, Yea, yea ; Nay, nay ; for whatsoever is more than these is of the evil one.

8. Ye have heard that it hath been said, An eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth : but I say unto you, Resist not him that is evil : but whosoever shall smite thee on thy right cheek, turn to him the other also. And if any man would go to law with thee, and take away thy coat, let him have thy cloak also. And whosoever shall compel thee to go a mile, go with him twain. Give to him that asketh thee, and from him that would borrow of thee turn not thou away.

9. Ye have heard that it was said, Thou shalt love thy neighbour, and hate thy enemy ; but I say unto you, Love your enemies, bless them that curse you ; do good to them that hate you ; and pray for them that persecute you ; that ye may be the sons of your Father which is in heaven : for He maketh His sun to rise on the evil and on the good, and sendeth rain on the just and on the unjust. For if ye love them that love you, what reward have ye ? do not even the publicans the same ? And if ye salute your brethren only, what do ye more than others ? do not even the Gentiles the same ? Be ye therefore perfect, even as your heavenly Father is perfect.

## 22.—Fidelity.

### § 1. THE ARAB AND HIS HORSE.

1. A caravan going to Damascus was once attacked by a gang of Arabs ; and after a brief resistance it was entirely overcome. A rich booty fell into the hands of the robbers. But while they were engaged in examining and dividing the spoil, they in their turn were attacked by a troop of Turkish horsemen, who had gone out from a certain city to meet and protect the caravan.



2. (The scale of fortune was at once turned. ) The robbers were now overpowered ; many of them were killed, and the rest were taken prisoners. The prisoners were bound with cords, and carried to the city to be given as slaves to the governor of the province.

3. Among the Arabs who had escaped death was a man named Hassan. He had been wounded during the fight by a bullet in the arm ; but as his wound was not mortal, the Turks placed him upon the back of a camel, and carried him away with the others. Now Hassan was the owner of a very fine horse ; and this horse fell into the hands of the Turks, and was made a prisoner like its master. Its front and hind legs were tied together by a leather thong.

4. In the night Hassan lay by the side of one of the tents, and his feet were bound together by a leather thong. Being kept awake by the pain of his wound, he heard the neighing of his horse a little distance off. Being unable to resist the desire to see his favourite horse and caress it once more, he slowly and painfully crawled along upon his hands and knees till he reached the spot where the horse stood.

5. "My poor friend," said he, "what will become of you in the hands of the Turks ? They will shut you up in a close stable. My wife and children will no longer bring you camel's milk to drink, or give you barley to eat in the hollow of their hands. You will no longer skim the desert with the fleetness of the wind. You will no longer bathe in the refreshing waters of the river. Go back to the tent of thy master. Tell my wife that she will never see her husband again ; and lick the hands of my children with your tongue in token of a father's love."

6. After thus speaking, Hassan gnawed away with his teeth the thong of goat-skin with which the legs of his horse had been tied together ; and the noble horse stood free. The faithful creature, seeing his master lying at his feet and not able to move, seemed to understand his helpless state and know what help to give him.

7. It bent down its head, and grasping with its teeth the girdle which was round its master's waist, ran off with him in its mouth at full gallop. It thus bore him over many miles of mountain and plain, until it reached its master's home. Then gently dropping him by the side of his wife and children, it fell down and died.

8. All the tribe to which Hassan belonged wept over the body of the faithful steed; and more than one Arab poet has celebrated in song its sagacity and faithfulness.

## § 2. IRMA AND THE LION.

1. I was once at Odessa, attached to an equestrian troupe, when the following romantic circumstance took place. Amongst the performers in this company was a young female lion-tamer, named Irma. Irma at all times was a quiet and lady-like young woman, far superior to the ordinary run of girls who figure as riders or acrobats in circuses and shows. She was remarkably handsome and graceful, and had maintained her self-respect in a public position that is often fatal to the reputation of a young and beautiful woman.

2. Irma's lions were named Leo and Nero. A year before I knew Irma, she had nursed Leo through a dangerous illness brought on by the excessive cold of a Russian winter, and the noble animal was for that reason deeply attached to her. Nero was a sullen and vicious brute, requiring incessant watchfulness to keep it tractable for the arena.

3. I had not been long in this company before I perceived that Irma had two admirers in the circus troupe, one of whom was a fine, manly young Frenchman named Henri Monfroid, a bare-back rider professionally, and the other a boorish Russian, with a villainous cast about the eyes that made him look the perfection of ugliness. I need hardly say that Henri was the favoured suitor. Somehow or other the big Russian got the notion into his head that I was also a suitor of the fair lion-tamer. An admirer indeed I was, but not a suitor.

As the fellow was of a jealous and brutal disposition, I should certainly have had cause for uneasiness about my own safety, if Irma had not shown an open partiality for young Henri. She had several times rejected Orloff's addresses, as the burly Russian himself told me; and on those occasions, when he made me an unwilling confidant, he invariably assured me that he would be revenged.

4. One day about six weeks after my arrival at Odessa I caught cold, and feeling very ill I sent word to the circus that I could not perform that night. In the evening I felt better, and I went for a walk through one of the avenues of the city. At about half-past nine I went into a shop close to the circus and called for some refreshment. I had not been there long, before the Russian, Orloff, came in and called for brandy. The shop at that time happened to be almost deserted, and we were the only customers present. As soon as Orloff perceived me, he came and sat down by my side, and I saw at once that the man was partially drunk. After greeting each other, we both smoked on in silence.

5. The Russian sat moody and silent for some time. "Englishman," he said suddenly, "I've revenged us both."

"What do you mean, Orloff?" I exclaimed in alarm.

"Revenge! man—revenge!"

"On whom?"

"On her."

"You've murdered her! you——"

"No!" he interrupted with drunken gravity; "I have not injured a hair of her head."

Somewhat relieved, but still not wholly reassured, I smoked on in silence.

6. Presently Orloff resumed talking. "You were a suitor of hers too, Englishman. Did she spurn you as if you were dirt under her feet?—the cat! Listen, man. Though neither you nor I can have her, that villain Henri shall not win the prize."

"What have you done?" I asked.

He was silent for a few moments, and then he told me

the whole truth ; and truly a more diabolical murder than what this man had planned could hardly be conceived. A few minutes before he came away from the circus, he had (as he told me) given the lion Nero a piece of meat steeped in a drug, that would most certainly irritate and madden the savage beast just at the very time when it would be in the circus with its mistress.

7. I turned pale as death when, after he had told me his story, I realised the awful peril of the beautiful young lion-queen. I glanced at the clock ; it wanted a few minutes to ten. I might possibly be in time to warn the girl ; and trusting it might be so, I rushed out and ran as hard as I could to the circus. When I arrived there, I ran through the stables towards the back entrance by which the performers were wont to enter the arena. I was too late ; the bars were up and the performance had begun. Naturally, the circus people were astonished at my sudden appearance, and half-a-dozen stalwart men caught hold of me and drew me back. In vain I struggled, and equally in vain I tried to make myself understood.

8. I was trying to explain my object, when a loud roar sounded above the martial strains of the music that was generally performed by the band at the time when Irma's lions were in the ring. Instantly the noise of a terrible commotion made itself heard from the other side. The men now released me, and we all ran up into the amphitheatre. Here the scene we saw was beyond all description ; men were shouting and gesticulating, while women were screaming or fainting all around the circus. Making my way through the crowd, I ran down to the barred ring where Irma lay prostrate under the claws and jaws of Nero, the lion.

9. In the meantime the circus people seemed paralysed, and no one knew what to do or how to drive the lion off. Red-hot irons were procured, but they were too short, and no one dared to enter the ring. The one man (Monfroid) who would have done so was absent. Suddenly

all eyes were attracted towards Leo, the other lion, who was standing in a part of the ring opposite to where I stood. To my surprise and delight I perceived that the majestic and noble animal was preparing for a spring. With a roar that, like a clap of thunder, seemed to shake the building to its centre, the animal in one bound flew across the arena, and dashed with all its force against the other lion, sending it flying like a shot from a gun against the iron bars of the circus. In an instant the lions sprang at each other and engaged in mortal conflict, and while they were thus engaged with each other, I entered the ring and carried out the insensible form of the young lion-tamer amidst the ringing cheers of the excited audience.

10. Fortunately, a surgeon was at hand ; and before we left the circus, we were all greatly relieved by the assurance that the wounds the maddened animal had inflicted were not of a serious nature.

11. I am happy to say that I was released from my engagements at Odessa in time to be present at Henri and Irma's wedding, which took place at Constantinople the day after I arrived there. By order of the Emperor, Orloff was sent to Siberia without having undergone so much as the formality of a trial ; and his Imperial Majesty tempered this act of despotism with a very graceful one that was much approved of by the citizens of Odessa. The courier, who brought His Majesty's decision, also brought a magnificent and costly diamond bracelet, the present of the Emperor to Irma, the lion-queen.

### § 3. THE DOG AND ITS MASTER.

#### 1.

A barking sound the shepherd hears,  
A cry as of a dog or fox ;  
He halts, and searches with his eye  
Among the scattered rocks :

And now at distance can discern  
A stirring in a brake of fern ;  
And instantly a dog is seen  
Glancing through that covert green.

## 2.

The dog is not of mountain breed ;  
Its motions, too, are wild and shy ;  
With something, as the shepherd thinks,  
Unusual in its cry :  
Nor is there any one in sight  
All round, in hollow or on height ;  
Nor shout, nor whistle strikes his ear :  
What is the creature doing here ?

## 3.

It was a cove, a huge recess,  
That keeps, till June, December's snow ;  
A lofty precipice in front, :  
A silent tarn below ;  
Far in the bosom of Helvellyn,  
Remote from public road or dwelling,  
Pathway or cultivated land,  
From trace of human foot or hand.

## 4.

Not free from boding thoughts, a while  
The shepherd stood, then made his way  
O'er rocks and stones, following the dog  
As quickly as he may ;  
Nor far had gone, before he found  
A human skeleton on the ground !  
The appalled discoverer, with a sigh,  
Looks round to learn the history.

## 5.

From these abrupt and perilous rocks  
 The man had fallen—that place of fear !  
 At length upon the shepherd's mind  
 It breaks, and all is clear :  
 He instantly recalled the name,  
 And who he was, and whence he came ;  
 Remembered, too, the very day  
 On which the traveller passed that way.

## 6.

But hear a wonder, for whose sake  
 This lamentable tale I tell ;  
 (A lasting monument of words )  
 This wonder merits well.  
 The dog, which still was hovering nigh,  
 Repeating the same timid cry,—  
 This dog had been, through three months' space,  
 A dweller in that savage place !

## 7.

Yes, proof was plain, that since the day  
 When this ill-fated traveller died,  
 The dog had watched about the spot,  
 Or by his master's side.  
 How nourished here through such long time  
 (He knows who gave that love sublime,)  
 And gave that strength of feeling great  
 Above all human estimate.

WORDSWORTH.

## 23.—Salt.

1. Salt is found almost everywhere. Not only is it mixed up with earth and water in various degrees, but it even exists in the bodies of most animals. It has been

reckoned that a man who weighs one hundred and fifty pounds has in him at least one pound of salt. Salt is contained in the bodies of those animals especially whose flesh is eaten as food. The world, in fact, is one great salt-cellar.

2. Let us now ask ourselves:—What are the different sources from which salt can be profitably taken or prepared? These can be grouped under two great heads: Land and Water.

(1.) Under the heading of Land, the sources are salt hills, salt mines, salt fields, and volcanoes.

(2.) Under the heading of Water, the sources are salt lakes, salt springs, and the ocean.

3. Salt hills. In India such hills are to be found in some of the north-west districts of the Punjab. If you look at a large map of India, you will see that the name of Salt Range is given to a line of hills running from east to west across the plain between the Indus and the Jhelum. Here salt is cut out in solid blocks, which for extent and purity are said to be equal to any in the world. About 50,000 tons of salt are produced from these hills each year.

4. Salt mines. A mine, as you are of course aware, is a pit dug down into the earth, sometimes to an immense depth. There are no such mines in India, but there are many in Europe. In one country (Poland) there is a famous mine running for more than a mile underground, and laid out as a town with streets and houses, all of which are cut out of pure salt. When this mine or town is well lighted up, the lights fixed against the white walls of salt make a most brilliant show.

5. Salt fields. There are a few such fields in the Punjab, more in the North-Western Provinces and Oudh, and most of all in North Behar. They are called *usar*. A white powder may be seen on certain fields, and this especially shows itself after a heavy fall of rain. The earth which contains this powder is scraped together, and is placed in a large vessel, through which water is filtered or drained out. The water which trickles through the filter is then



boiled in pots; and salt, mixed with a kindred substance, called saltpetre, is produced. There is a caste or class of men in Upper India called Luniya or Nuniya (that is, "men of salt"), who are especially engaged in making salt and saltpetre out of this kind of earth.

6. Volcanoes. A volcano is a burning mountain which throws out melted rocks and other things from its peak. After an eruption the cracks and crevices on the side of the mountain, and especially those nearest its burning mouth, are often covered with a thick coat of salt. Perhaps this salt is made by nature in some huge boiling-pot under the earth, in the same kind of way as Luniyas make it in their small pots above ground. There are no volcanoes in India.

7. Let us now examine those sources that come under the head of *water*, viz., salt lakes, salt springs, and the sea or ocean. Salt that comes from any of these sources is produced by a process called evaporation.

8. But what is this process? Put a basin of water out in the sun; after some time it dries up, and the water is seen no more. This is evaporation. The water has been changed by the sun's heat into vapour or water-dust, the grains or particles of which are so very minute that they cannot be seen or felt. The water has, in fact, been absorbed into the air and made a part of it.

9. But suppose the water to be mixed with mud or any other solid substance, such as salt. Then what happens? The water disappears, but the salt remains at the bottom of the basin. This, then, is the method by which salt is produced from water. The water in which the salt is contained is placed in shallow saucers or pans; and these pans are exposed to the fierce heat of the sun until the liquid is dried up, and nothing but the salty sediment remains.

10. Salt lakes. There is an enormous salt lake between Asia and Europe called the Caspian Sea. This is a lake rather than a sea, because it is entirely surrounded by land; but it is called a sea on account of its size, and b

cause its water is not fresh. In India the best example of a salt lake is the Sambhar Lake in Rajputana. You will find it marked on the map at the foot of the Aravali Hills, and a little to the north of Ajmere.

11. Salt springs. There are no such natural springs in India, but there are many in England. In the lower provinces of Bengal the well-water is often rather salty or brackish, which proves that the spring at the bottom of the well is in contact with a bed of salty earth under ground. But the amount of salt in such wells is only enough to give an unpleasant taste to the water, and not enough to be worth the trouble of extraction.

12. The sea or ocean. This is the great storehouse of salt throughout the world; for the greater part of the earth's surface is covered with the sea or ocean, and the water of the ocean is everywhere abundantly mixed with salt. In India salt is manufactured (by evaporation) more or less along the whole of the coast line. But the chief centres of this industry are Gujrat and the Coromandel coast.

13. Having finished the *sources*, let us now inquire what are the uses of salt. These are four in number: (1) as food for ourselves; (2) as food for cattle; (3) for preserving meat; (4) as a manure to the land.

14. As food to ourselves. The body of a man cannot be strong or healthy without salt; for if he gets no salt, his flesh falls away, his hair drops off, his eyes grow dim, his bones become soft, and his whole bodily system breaks down. Salt is contained in the flesh of animals; but in India the greater part of the peasants get little or no animal food. Hence salt is to them a necessity of life; and it is fortunate that their country produces it in such abundance.

15. As food for cattle. Their flesh, as has been stated already, contains a certain amount of salt by nature; but the supply of salt requires to be renewed. The wild beasts of the field, the tame cattle in the farmyard, and in fact all animals which eat grass, are not only fond of salt, but cannot thrive without it. Sheep especially require salt

with their fodder. In countries where salt springs exist cattle will go a long distance to get a drink of such water.

16. For preserving meat. It is well known that meat, unless it is cured with salt or saltpetre, soon becomes putrid. But if salt is infused into meat, it keeps it sound.

17. As a manure. There are certain soils which are made more fertile by the addition of salt; and there are certain green plants useful for food which grow best in salty soil. The cocoa-nut tree, for example, thrives best by the seaside, where the soil is saturated with salt. Here, in India, however, salt does not seem to be needed as a manure; and the salt fields or *usar* lands are not productive either of grass or grain.

18. The extent to which salt is valued by men as an article of food is shown by certain customs.

In some countries, for example, guests are placed at the table according to the position of the salt-cellar. Those of the highest rank are seated above the salt, and those of the lower rank below it.

Among the Arabs contracts are made binding by the use of salt. A tray of salt is placed between the two parties; each takes a piece of salt in his hand, and that binds them to good faith for ever.

In Upper India the word for faithful is *namak-haldl*, or "true to one's salt." And the word for unfaithful or traitor is *namak-harám*, or "false to one's salt."

## 24.—The Spider and the Fly: A Caution against Listening to Flattery.

### 1.

"Will you walk into my parlour?" said the spider to the fly;  
"Tis the prettiest little parlour that ever you did spy.  
The way into my parlour is up a winding stair;  
And I have many curious things to show you when you're there."

"Oh no, no," said the little fly, "to ask me is in vain,  
For who goes up your winding stair can ne'er come down  
again."

## 2.

"I am sure you must be weary, dear, with soaring up so  
high :

Will you rest upon my little bed ?" said the spider to the  
fly.

"There are pretty curtains drawn around ; the sheets are  
fine and thin ;

And if you like to rest awhile, I'll snugly tuck you in."

"Oh no, no," said the little fly, "for I've often heard it  
said,

They never, never wake again who sleep upon your bed !"

## 3.

Said the cunning spider to the fly, "Dear friend, what  
can I do

To prove the warm affection I've always felt for you ?

I have within my pantry good store of all that's nice,

I'm sure you're very welcome—will you please to take a  
slice ?"

"Oh no, no," said the little fly, "kind sir, that cannot be ;  
I've heard what's in your pantry, and I do not wish to  
see."

## 4.

"Sweet creature," said the spider, "you're witty and  
you're wise ;

How handsome are your gauzy wings, how brilliant are  
your eyes !

I have a little looking-glass upon my parlour shelf,

If you'll step in one moment, dear, you shall behold your-  
self."

"I thank you, gentle sir," she said, "for what you please  
to say ;

And bidding you good morning now, I'll call another day."

## 5.

The spider turned him round about, and went into his den ;  
For well he knew the silly fly would soon come back again :  
So he wove a subtle web in a little corner sly,  
And set his table ready to dine upon the fly.  
Then he came out to his door again, and merrily did sing :  
“Come hither, hither, pretty fly with the pearl and silver wing ;  
Your robes are green and purple—there’s a crest upon your head !  
Your eyes are like the diamond bright, but mine are dull as lead.”

## 6.

Alas ! alas ! how very soon this silly little fly,  
Hearing his wily, flattering words, came slowly flitting by,  
With buzzing wings she hung aloft, then near and nearer drew,  
Thinking only of her brilliant eyes, her green and purple hue,  
Thinking only of her crested head—poor foolish thing !  
At last,  
Up jumped the cunning spider, and fiercely held her fast.  
He dragged her up his winding stair, into his dismal den,  
Within his little parlour—but she ne’er came out again !  
MARY HOWITT.

## 25.—The Delhi Massacre.

The army of Nádír Sháh, king of the Persians, reached Delhi in the beginning of Mareh. The Emperor of Delhi had been already defeated in the battle fought to the west of the city, and nothing remained for the defeated monarch but to surrender to Nádír Sháh and accompany him into

Delhi. On their arrival both kings took up their residence in the royal palace. Nádir distributed a portion of his troops throughout the town; he ordered strict discipline to be observed, and stationed guardsmen in different places for the protection of the inhabitants.

2. These precautions did not succeed in conciliating the Indians, who looked on the ferocity of the strangers with terror, and on their intrusion with disgust. On the second day after the occupation of the city, a report was spread that Nádir Sháh was dead, on which the hatred of the Indians broke forth without restraint. They fell on the Persians within their reach, and from the manner in which those troops were scattered throughout the city, a considerable number fell sacrifices to the popular fury. The Indian nobles made no effort to protect the Persians; some even gave up to be murdered those who had been furnished for the protection of their palaces.

3. Nádir Sháh at first applied his whole attention to suppressing the tumult, and though provoked to find that it continued during the whole night, and seemed rather to increase than diminish, he mounted his horse at daybreak in the hope that his presenee would restore quiet. The first objects that met his eyes in the streets were the dead bodies of his countrymen; and he was soon assailed with stones, arrows, and firearms from the houses. At last, when one of his chiefs was killed at his side by a shot aimed at himself, he gave way to his passion, and ordered a general massacre of the Indians.

4. The slaughter of the inhabitants of Delhi raged from sunrise till near the evening, and was attended with all the horrors that could arise from rapine, lust, and the thirst for vengeance. The city was set on fire in several places, and was soon involved in one scene of destruction, bloodshed, and terror. At length Nádir, satiated with carnage, allowed himself to be prevailed on by the Emperor or his prime minister, and gave an order to stop the massacre; and, to the infinite credit of his discipline, it was immediately obeyed; but by this time the streets of the city

were streaming with blood, and scattered with the gashed corpses not only of Indian soldiers, but of old men, women, and children.

5. The sufferings of the people of Delhi did not cease with this tragedy. Nádir's sole object in invading India was to enrich himself by its plunder, and he began to discuss the contributions from the moment of his victory. His first adviser in plunder was Sádát Khan, but that nobleman died soon after reaching Delhi. The work of exaction was then committed to Sirbalund Khan and a Persian named Talmásq Khan; and their proceedings, which were very rigorous of themselves, were made still more so by the violence and impatience of Nádir.

6. They first took possession of the imperial treasures and jewels, including the celebrated peacock throne. They afterwards seized on the whole effects of some great nobles, and compelled the rest to sacrifice the largest part of their property as a ransom for the remainder. They then fell on the inferior officers and on the common inhabitants: guards were stationed to prevent people from leaving the city; and every man was constrained to disclose the amount of his fortune and to pay accordingly. Every species of cruelty was employed to extort these contributions. Great numbers of the inhabitants died of the usage they received, and many destroyed themselves to avoid the disgrace and torture. "Sleep and rest," as an eye-witness writes, "forsook the city. In every chamber and house was heard the cry of affliction. Before it was a general massacre, but now it was the murder of individuals."

7. Contributions were also levied on the governors of provinces, until Nádir was at length convinced that he had exhausted all the sources from which wealth was to be obtained, and commenced making preparations for returning to his own country. He made a treaty with Mohammed Shah, the Emperor of Delhi, by which all the country west of the Indus was ceded to him. He married his son to a princess of the house of Timur. Finally he reseatd Mohammed on the throne, invested him with

his own hand with the ornaments of the diadem, and enjoined all the Indian nobles to obey him implicitly, on pain of his future indignation and vengeance.

8. At length he marched from Delhi, after a residence of fifty-eight days, carrying with him a treasure in money, which by the lowest computation amounted to eight or nine millions sterling, besides several millions in gold and silver plate, valuable furniture, and rich stuffs of every description; and this does not include the jewels, whose value was beyond reckoning. He also carried off many elephants, horses, and camels, and led away the most skilful workmen and artisans, to the number of several hundreds, all of whom were driven into exile, deprived of every hope of seeing again their homes and country; and many of them took away the painful recollection of friends and relatives whom they had seen slaughtered without mercy by the king who was now dragging them off into slavery.

ELPHINSTONE (*adapted*).

## 26.—Belshazzar's Feast.

### § 1. IN PROSE.

1. Belshazzar, the king, made a great feast to a thousand of his lords, and drank wine before the thousands. While he was tasting the wine, he commanded his servants to bring the gold and silver vessels which Nebuchadnezzar, his father, had taken out of the temple that was in Jerusalem, that the king and his lords, his wives, and his concubines might drink therein.

2. Then they brought the golden vessels that were taken out of the temple of the house of God which was at Jerusalem; and the king and his lords, his wives, and his concubines drank out of them. They drank wine and praised the gods of gold, and of silver, of brass, of iron, of wood, and of stone.



3. In the same hour came forth the fingers of a man's hand, and wrote over against the candlestick upon the plaster of the wall of the king's palace; and the king saw the part of the hand that wrote. Then the king's countenance was changed, and his thoughts troubled him; and the joints of his loins were loosened, and his knees smote one against another.

4. The king cried aloud to bring in the enchanter, the Chaldeans, and the soothsayers: and the king spake and said to the wise men of Babylon, "Whosoever shall read this writing and show me the interpretation thereof, shall be clothed with purple, and have a chain of gold about his neck, and shall be the third ruler in the kingdom."

5. Then came in all the king's wise men; but they could not read the writing, nor make known to the king the interpretation. Then was king Belshazzar greatly troubled, and his countenance was changed, and his lords were perplexed.

6. Now the queen, by reason of the words of the king and his lords, came into the banquet house, and said, "O king, live for ever; let not thy thoughts trouble thee, nor let thy countenance be changed. There is a man in thy kingdom, in whom is the spirit of the holy gods; and in the days of thy father light and understanding and wisdom, like the wisdom of the gods, were found in him: and thy father, the king, I say, thy father made him master of the magicians, enchanters, Chaldeans, and soothsayers; forasmuch as an excellent spirit and knowledge and understanding in the interpreting of dreams, and showing of dark sentences, and dissolving of doubts, were found in him. Now let this Daniel, whom the king thy father named Belteshazzar, be called, and he will show thee the interpretation."

7. Then was Daniel brought in before the king. The king spake and said unto Daniel, "Art thou that Daniel, who is of the children of the captivity, whom the king, my father, brought out of Judah? I have heard of thee,

that the spirit of the gods is in thee, and that light and understanding and excellent wisdom are found in thee. This day have the wise men, the enchanters, and the soothsayers been brought in before me, that they should read this writing on the wall, and make known unto me the interpretation, but they could not. Now if thou canst read the writing, and make known to me the interpretation thereof, thou shalt be clothed with purple, and have a chain of gold about thy neck, and shalt be the third ruler in the kingdom."

8. Then Daniel answered thus before the king, "Let thy gifts be to thyself, O king, and give thy rewards to another; nevertheless I will read the writing unto the king, and make known to him the interpretation. O king, the most high God gave Nebuchadnezzar, thy father, the kingdom, and greatness, and glory, and majesty: and because of the greatness that He gave him, all peoples, nations, and languages trembled and feared before him; whom he would he slew, and whom he would he kept alive; whom he would he raised up, and whom he would he put down. But when his heart was lifted up, and his spirit was hardened that he dealt proudly, he was deposed from his kingly throne, and they took his glory from him: and he was driven from the sons of men; and his heart was made like the beasts, and his dwelling was with the wild asses; he was fed with grass like oxen, and his body was wet with the dew of heaven; until he knew that the most high God ruleth in the kingdom of men, and that He setteth up over it whomsoever He will. And thou, his son, O Belshazzar, hast not humbled thine heart, though thou knowest all this; but hast lifted up thyself against the Lord of heaven; and they have brought the vessels of His house before thee, and thou, and thy lords, thy wives, and thy concubines have drunk wine in them; and thou hast praised the gods of silver, and gold, of brass, iron, wood, and stone, which see not, nor hear, nor know: and the God in whose hand thy breath is, and whose are all thy ways, hast thou not glorified. Then was the hand sent

out before thee, and the writing was inscribed on the wall. And this is the writing that was inscribed, *Mene, mene, tekel, upharsin*. This is the interpretation: *Mene*; God hath numbered thy kingdom, and brought it to an end. *Tekel*; thou art weighed in the balance and found wanting. *Peres*; thy kingdom is divided, and given to the Medes and Persians."

9. Then commanded Belshazzar, and they clothed Daniel with purple, and put a chain of gold about his neck, and made proclamation concerning him, that he should be the third ruler in the kingdom.

10. In that night was Belshazzar, the king of the Chaldeans, slain. *Old Testament.*

## § 2. IN VERSE.

### 1.

The king was on his throne,  
 The satraps throng'd the hall;  
 A thousand bright lamps shone  
 O'er that high festival.  
 A thousand cups of gold,  
 In Judah deem'd divine,  
 Jehovah's vessels, held  
 The godless heathen's wine.

### 2.

In that same hour and hall,  
 The fingers of a hand  
 Came forth against the wall,  
 And wrote as if on sand.  
 The fingers of a man—  
 A solitary hand—  
 Along the letters ran,  
 And traced them like a wand.

## 3.

The monarch saw and shook,  
And bade no more rejoice ;  
All bloodless wax'd his look,  
And tremulous his voice.  
“ Let the men of lore appear,  
The wisest of the earth,  
To expound the words of fear  
Which mar our royal mirth.”

## 4.

Chaldea's seers are good,  
But here they have no skill,  
And the unknown letters stood  
Untold and awful still.  
And Babel's men of age  
Are wise and deep in lore ;  
But now they were not sage :  
They saw, but knew no more.

## 5.

A captive in the land,  
A stranger and a youth,  
He heard the king's command,  
He saw that writing's truth.  
The lamps around were bright,  
The prophecy in view ;  
He read it on that night ;  
The morrow proved it true.

## 6.

“ Belshazzar's grave is made,  
His kingdom pass'd away ;  
He, in the balance weigh'd,  
Is light and worthless clay.

The shroud his robe of state,  
His canopy in stone ;  
The Mede is at his gate !  
The Persian on his throne ! ”

BYRON.

## 27.—The Elephant.

### § 1. GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

1. The elephant is the largest animal that lives on land, as the whale is the largest that lives in water. There are two distinct species of elephants, one of which belongs to Asia, and the other to Africa.

2. Between these two species there are five well-marked points of difference :—

(a) In the elephant of Asia the ears are of moderate size : in that of Africa the ears are of enormous magnitude, nearly meeting on the back of the head, and hanging with their tips much below the animal's neck.

(b) The Asiatic elephant is of a dull gray colour, something like the colour of ordinary mud ; the African elephant is almost black and of a brighter tint.

(c) The backbone of the Asiatic elephant rises in a curve from the tail towards the middle of the back, and from the middle of the back it goes down again with a steady slope toward the neck. But in the African elephant the backbone, after reaching its greatest height from the tail, and beginning to slope down towards the neck, takes an upward turn again before it reaches the shoulder. There is therefore a saddle-shaped dip in the back something like that of a horse, but not so deep and not so near the middle of the body.

(d) In both species the male elephant has two large tusks. In Africa, but not in Asia, the female has tusks also.

(e) The tusks of the African elephant are much longer than those of the Asiatic species.

3. The elephant, though a very large animal, is not so high as has been supposed. Some writers have given it an average height of 14 or 16 feet, and have even said that it sometimes reaches 20 feet. This error has arisen from the fact that the eye is deceived on beholding the huge beast, and that the height appears to be much greater than it is. Scarcely any elephant measures more than ten feet at the shoulder, and the average height is eight or nine feet.

4. The two most conspicuous parts of the elephant's body are its trunk and its tusks. The trunk will be described below in a separate section. The pair of tusks stands below its face, each tusk being almost in a line with the eye above it. The tusk of an African elephant is from six to eight feet long. On an average a pair of tusks weighs about one hundred and twenty pounds, and the ivory which it yields sells at a great price.

5. The eyes of the elephant are small, but keen and quick-sighted, like those of a dog. Its sense of hearing is also very quick; and in the wild state it detects the slightest sound when the hunter approaches. Its power of hearing is not only quick, but well regulated; for it likes music, and easily learns to mark time and move in step to the sound of drums.

6. In order to support the very heavy weight which is thrown upon them, the legs are very stout; and there is no joint or hough in the middle of the hinder leg, such as is found in most quadrupeds, as for example in the horse or cow.

7. The food of the elephant consists only of leaves, grass, and vegetables of various other kinds; it requires a large quantity of these to sustain its huge body. It is also a thirsty animal, and requires a large amount of water.

8. The elephant, though it is found only in tropical or almost tropical countries, does not love heat. It seems to feel the sun in India more than oxen do, and more in fact than other animals in this country. In Ceylon and Africa it climbs up high mountains for the sake of cool air.

But on account of its great need of water and vegetables, it is compelled, in spite of its dislike to heat, to dwell for the most part in hot and low-lying lands, where it can get food and water in abundance.

9. In Africa elephants are not tamed. The wild elephants are hunted partly for their ivory, and partly for their flesh. The ivory is exported to England, where it fetches a very high price. The flesh is eaten by the natives of Africa, whose strong jaws do not shrink from the labour of chewing the toughest meat.

10. Many different methods of entrapping and slaying the elephant are employed by the natives of Africa. Of these the most cruel and deadly is the pitfall. A pit is dug, and a sharp stake is fixed upright in the middle of it. The top is then overlaid with light sticks which are concealed with grass and other attractive baits. The poor elephant, if it sets foot on this light covering, falls suddenly into the pit, where it is transfixed by its own weight and dies a miserable death.

11. In India, Ceylon, and Indo-China, elephants are not hunted either for their flesh or their ivory, but they are caught alive, tamed, and trained for service. The animal is used chiefly for four different purposes:—

(a) For purposes of show and pomp; (b) for carrying persons over fields or rough roads from one place to another; (c) for carrying burdens—in which capacity it is not so useful as the camel; (d) as a safe seat from which men can shoot tigers. In ancient India they were much used in war.

12. A bench is tied on the elephant's back; the driver sits astride its neck, and guides it partly by words of which the elephant has been taught to understand the purport, and partly by an iron goad which is blunt at one end and pointed at the other.

13. In Indo-China the animal is almost sacred, and special sanctity is attached to what is called the White Elephant. The so-called white elephant is an albino, and the colour is a pinky white, like the nostril of a white

horse. "The Lord of the White Elephants" was a title of the kings of Burma. He decorated them with strings of gems, pearls, and gold coins, and lodged them in splendid buildings, and gave them silver troughs to eat from.

14. In the seaports of Burma, where British merchants have long been settled, elephants are trained to work in saw-mills, as you will read below.

## § 2. THE TRUNK OF THE ELEPHANT.

1. The long trunk of the elephant is a wonderful example of Divine wisdom. The neck of four-footed animals is usually long, to enable them to reach their food without difficulty; but the elephant has a short neck, to enable him the more easily to support the weight of his huge head and heavy tusks. The difficulty of getting food is admirably overcome by his long trunk.

2. The trunk of the elephant is to him what the neck is to other animals. It is also a nose to him; for at the end of it there is a hollow place like a cup, and in the bottom of the cup are two holes or nostrils, through which the animal smells and breathes. It is an arm and a hand too; and hence it has been said that the elephant carries a nose in his hand.

3. At the end of the trunk there is a projection about five inches long, which forms a finger. With this finger the animal can pick up a pin or the smallest piece of money from the ground; it can separate herbs and flowers and take them up one by one; it can untie knots; it can open and shut gates, by turning the keys or pushing back the bolts; and with this finger an elephant has been taught to make regular marks like letters, with the help of an instrument as small as a pen.

4. The trunk of a full-grown elephant is about eight feet long. It can be made shorter or longer as the animal chooses, and can be moved with great ease in every possible direction. It has such prodigious strength that the



animal can knock down a man with it, and pull up trees of small size by the roots.

5. The trunk, besides doing the duty of neck, hand, nose, and finger, acts the part of a weapon. In fact it is the only weapon which the elephant possesses. It seizes its enemy (and the enemy may be a man, or a tiger, or any other beast), by the trunk, throws him in the air, then brings him down again to the earth, and tramples upon him.

6. This wonderful limb is really a prolongation of the nose and upper lip, which, after coalescing into one, have so increased in length as to reach the ground and serve as hand and finger. There is no other animal which possesses a similar member. The common name for elephant in Upper India is *hálhí*, which means "the animal possessing a hand."

## 28.—Elephants in Saw-Mills.

1. In Burma, along the banks of the rivers, forests of teak abound. This tree grows tall and straight. Its timber is much used for ship-building in England, and largely imported there for that purpose. It is especially useful for making planks or any other wood-work of a ship.

2. Immense saw-mills have been erected near Rangoon and Moulmein, which towns are situated at the mouths of the two great rivers of Burma. Moulmein is perhaps the most noted for its timber industry, and the largest stocks of elephants are there employed. In Rangoon the largest mill has six or seven elephants at work.

3. A certain traveller, who had never been to Burma before, was so struck with the sight of these huge beasts, stalking quietly about the mill yards, amid the noise of machinery and the shrieking of circular saws on every side, that he visited every mill which he could find; and he has left us the following description:—

4. The male elephants have the tips of their tusks cut off and mounted with brass knobs. Each elephant is

managed by a driver, who sits astride the animal's neck just behind the ears, assisted by a man on foot.

5. Each elephant has a leather collar fitted with rings, into which long chains are hooked for traces. When a log is to be hauled up out of the water over the muddy bank of the river, the man on foot fastens a chain to it, and the elephant drags it along the bare ground with the greatest ease.

6. The elephant threads his way between piles of logs, where horses would cut themselves or fall; and when a chain trace gets between his legs, he knows that he must step over it, which a horse would not have sense enough to know.

7. In this way the logs are dragged out of the water; and other elephants, working together, assist each other in piling them. The timber is water-soaked and extremely heavy.

8. Meantime other elephants, many of them immense creatures, appearing to be twice the size of those taken about for show, are passing in and out of the mills, dragging out the slabs, planks, and square timber.

9. In all these works the elephant displays marvellous patience, industry, and sagacity. It is not only the largest, but the most sagacious of the lower animals.

## 29.—Capturing Wild Elephants.

### § 1. CAPTURING A SINGLE ELEPHANT.

1. There are two modes of capturing wild elephants in Asia: one is by entrapping some solitary male elephant, as he wanders at will through the forest; the other consists in driving a herd of elephants into an enclosed place previously prepared, and leading them out one by one. As the second method is described in the following section, an account will now be given of the first.

2. For catching a solitary elephant, the hunters are aided by trained females called Koomkies, without whom

they could do nothing. When the Koomkies see a male grazing out alone, they come gradually towards him, plucking leaves and grass as they advance, and with as little appearance of purpose as if they were in the habit of being always in his company.

3. When they close around him and flatter him with their attentions, he soon becomes attracted, and forgets his usual caution. They so entirely take possession of his thoughts, that he does not perceive what danger he is in, or notice that the hunters are silently creeping up towards him.

4. These men, when they see that their intended victim has been entirely thrown off his guard by the wiles of the females, creep quietly along the ground, and tie nooses of strong rope to his ankles, fastening the ends of the cords to some tree near at hand. If there is no tree within reach of the rope, the Koomkies know quite well what to do. They draw the elephant on till they bring him near some tree, which will be strong enough to bear his struggles and contortions, after his legs have been tied to it.

5. As soon as the nooses have been firmly fastened round the ankles of the elephant, and the ends tied round the trunk of a tree, the hunters give the signal, and the Koomkies go away, leaving their dupe to his fate.

6. The elephant, when he finds that the females have deserted him and tricked him into being bound, becomes mad with rage, and struggles with all his force to get free. He rolls on the ground, rends the air with his angry cries, butts at the tree with all his might, and has been known to stand on his hind legs, furiously attempting to break the ropes.

7. But all his struggles are in vain. After a while, having exhausted himself with his efforts to escape, and finding that all such efforts are useless, he permits himself to be led away by his masters. By degrees he is tamed and broken into work. Nor do we ever hear of his taking vengeance on the females, by whose wiles he was captured and whose captivity he now shares.

## § 2. CAPTURING A HERD.

1. In catching wild elephants in Ceylon, the native hunters choose a place near the forest and make a fence round it, each post in the fence being the trunk of a tree. Sometimes the space enclosed is so great that the fence extends for several miles. The space inside the fence is called a corral. There are openings like great doorways left in it, by which means the elephants are to get in, when they come rushing towards it.

2. When the corral has been made ready, the elephants begin to see blazing lights all round them. These are the fires that the hunters have made for frightening the elephants.

3. The fires seem at first a long way off. But they are brought nearer and nearer, until the victims are hemmed in by fires on all sides but one. Behind the flames are crowds of men, with white shining sticks and spears in their hands. The men knock these sticks about, and brandish their spears, all the time making a great shouting noise, to frighten the elephants as much as they can.

4. The elephants look about to see how they can escape: only one way is left open, and down this way the whole herd starts off, running at a furious pace. That one way leads them to the corral. As soon as they are within the enclosure the hunters bar up the doorways, and the elephants are hemmed in as securely as if they were in prison.

5. One by one they must be got out, and this is done with the help of tame elephants which were once caught by the same method themselves; but since then they have been well taught, and are now quite willing to help to catch their old friends in the forest.

6. When one of the elephants has been taken out, the natives bar the doorway behind him. He rushes about in great fury; but the tame elephants then come, one on each side of him, and stroke him with their trunks and seem to talk to him.

7. He becomes a little quieter while they are with

him. By and by they entice him to follow them away from the corral. When they come to a strong tree they stop. The hunters keep close behind, and contrive to slip a strong rope round one of his legs, and then to coil it round and round the tree. As soon as he is tied fast, his false friends leave him. He tries to follow them, and when he finds that he cannot, he roars and struggles as if he would pull the tree down.

8. The hunters soon come back, and bring him cocoa-nuts and plenty of green leaves to eat. At first he is too angry to eat, and he tosses the cocoa-nuts about, and tramples them under his feet; but in spite of his rage he cannot help getting hungry. By and by he is glad to take all the nuts and other good things that the hunters bring him. In a few days he begins to be tame and gentle; and in a little time he can be made to do anything his master likes. One by one the other elephants in the corral are let out and tamed in the same way.

### 30.—Stories about Elephants.

The elephant is not only gifted, as you have seen, with a remarkable degree of sagacity, but is subject to feelings and passions very similar to our own. The stories which will now be given are examples of revenge, remorse, patience, and gratitude.

#### § 1. AN ELEPHANT'S REVENGE.

1. An old Indian tailor, who carried on his business in a small shop, the front of which was open to the street, was one day making some very fine clothes. An elephant, passing along towards a river, put in his trunk at the tailor's window, not meaning to do any harm.

2. The tailor, from the mere love of mischief, pricked the trunk with his needle, which gave the animal a good deal of pain. The elephant hastily withdrew, and jogged off to the river-bank. The act of the tailor was cruel and mischievous, and you will see how it was punished.

3. The elephant, taking up a great quantity of water into his trunk and mouth, soon after reappeared at the tailor's window and, discharging the whole at him, wetted him all over, spoiled the fine clothes he was making, and made him the laughing-stock of his neighbours.

4. Another story is told of an artist who was taking a portrait of an elephant. He wished to portray the animal in the attitude of opening his mouth and throwing his trunk back into the air. To obtain this attitude an apple was now and then thrown above the elephant's head.

5. To save an excessive expenditure of apples, false throws were several times made, which had the effect of causing the elephant to put his mouth and trunk into the position desired. The elephant was angry at the trick played upon him; but he repressed his anger for the moment.

6. At length, when the artist had nearly finished the portrait, the elephant filled his trunk with water, as if with the intention to drink; but instead of putting the water into his mouth, he poured the whole of it upon the artist and his painting.

7. Elephants can also be vindictive towards each other. A strong elephant at Bhurtpore snatched away a water-pail from another elephant not so strong as himself, and then walked to the edge of a vast masonry tank for the purpose of lowering the bucket into the water and drawing it up again with his trunk. The plundered animal saw his chance, and came quietly up behind the thief; then rushed at him with all his might, while he was in the act of lowering the bucket, and pushed him over the edge of the tank.

## § 2. AN ELEPHANT'S REMORSE.

1. In India, in former times, kings were fond of seeing animals fight each other in some enclosed space, round which the nobles of the land and thousands of the lower classes were collected to enjoy this barbarous sport. Even

such huge animals as camels and elephants were turned into the arena, and made to fight each other for the amusement of the spectators.

2. The following story is told by an eye-witness of a fight, or rather an intended fight, between two elephants, which took place during the reign of a late king of Oudh. One of the combatants, to whom the name of Mulleer had been given, was a great favourite with his master. He was a fine specimen of his breed; and he had been singled out to fight another elephant, who was believed to be his equal in strength and valour.

3. Mulleer, who had been kindly treated all his life, was not used to the rough treatment he now received from the men, who were goading him on to fight. In a moment of fury he turned suddenly round upon his keeper and killed him with one blow of his trunk, and put his foot upon his carcass.

4. At this moment a woman with a child in her arms rushed towards the elephant, and said:—"O Mulleer! see what you have done! you have taken off the roof of our home; now break down the walls. You have killed my husband, whom you loved so well; now kill me and my son."

5. The elephant at once knew her voice, and was smitten with remorse, as he showed by his drooping ears and down-cast head. He took his foot off the keeper's carcass; and when the widowed woman threw herself upon the body and wept, the elephant stood by with drooping head, as if he shared her grief.

6. The king now ordered that the intended combat should be given up, and gave the woman leave to call the elephant away. The animal knelt at her command; and after she had mounted, he handed up her child to her with his trunk, and walked slowly out of the arena, in which he had committed so great a crime.

7. From that day forward she became his keeper; and he would allow no one else to attend to him. The sense of remorse never quite left him, and he was subject to fits

of ill humour for the rest of his life. But in his worst fits he could be soothed by her voice or touch, when it would have been dangerous for any one else to come near him.

### § 3. AN ELEPHANT'S PATIENCE.

1. An elephant at Calcutta had a disease in his eyes. For three days he was completely blind. His owner asked an English doctor whether he could do anything to relieve the poor animal. The doctor said he would try the same remedy that was commonly applied to similar diseases in the human eye.

2. The large animal was made to lie down; and at first, on the application of the remedy, it raised an extraordinary roar at the acute pain which it occasioned. The effect, however, was wonderful. The eye was in a manner restored, and the animal could partially see.

3. The next day, when he was brought and heard the doctor's voice, he lay down of himself, placed his enormous head on one side, curled up his trunk, drew in his breath, just like a man about to endure a surgical operation, gave a sigh of relief when it was over, and then by trunk and gesture evidently wished to express his gratitude. What sagacity! What a lesson to us of patience!

BISHOP WILSON.

### § 4. AN ELEPHANT'S GRATITUDE.

1. The following account is given by an English gentleman, who had a favourite elephant in India. It shows how grateful the animal could be for kindness, and how ready it was at all times to think of its master's convenience.

2. "I performed many long journeys upon an elephant, and whenever I wished to make a sketch, the docile creature would stand perfectly still till my drawing was finished. If at any time I wished to get a ripe mango-fruit that was out of my reach, he would select the most fruitful branch, break it off, and offer it to me with his trunk.



3. "Sometimes I gave him some of the fruit for himself, and he would thank me by raising his trunk three times over his head, and make a gentle murmuring noise as he did so. When I was at breakfast in the morning, he always came to the tent door to be cheered by my praises and caresses, and to receive fruit and sugar-candy.

4. "When branches of trees came in my way, he broke them off at once, twisting his trunk round them; but he often broke off a leafy bough for himself, and used it as a fan to keep off the flies, waving it to and fro with his trunk."

### 31.—Make Haste to Live.

#### 1.

Make haste, O man, to live ;  
For thou so soon must die ;  
Time hurries past thee like the breeze—  
How swift the moments fly !

#### 2.

To breathe, and wake and sleep,  
To smile, to sigh, to grieve,  
To move in idleness through earth—  
This, this is not to live.

#### 3.

Make haste, O man, to do  
Whatever must be done ;  
Thou hast no time to lose in sloth ;  
Thy day will soon be gone.

#### 4.

Up then with speed, and work,  
Fling ease and self away ;  
This is no time for thee to sleep—  
Up, watch, and work, and pray.

## 5.

The useful, not the great,  
 The thing that never dies,  
 The silent toil that is not lost—  
 Set these before thine eyes.

## 6.

The seed, whose leaf and flower,  
 Though poor in human sight,  
 Bring forth at last the eternal fruit,  
 Sow thou by day and night.

## 7.

Make haste, O man, to live.  
 Thy time is almost o'er ;  
 O sleep not, dream not, but arise—  
 The Judge is at the door.

HORATIUS BONAR.

### 32.—Select Precepts.

#### § 1. FROM THE PROVERBS OF SOLOMON.

1. The evil bow before the good ; and the wicked at the gates of the righteous.

2. He that despiseth his neighbour sinneth : but he that hath pity on the poor, happy is he.

3. Do they not err that devise evil ? But merey and truth shall be to them that devise good.

4. In all labour there is profit : but the talk of the lips tendeth only to penury.

5. A true witness delivereth souls from evil : but a false witness is an abomination to the Lord.

6. In the fear of the Lord is strong confidence, and His children shall have a place of refuge.

7. In the multitude of people is the king's glory : but in the poverty of people is the destruction of the princee.

8. He that is slow to anger is of great understanding : but he that is hasty of spirit exposeth his folly.

9. A sound heart is the life of the flesh : but envy is the rottenness of the bones.

10. He that oppresseth the poor reproacheth his Maker : but he that hath mercy on the needy honoureth Him.

11. The wicked is overthrown in his evil doing : but the righteous hath hope even at the time of death.

12. Righteousness exalteth a nation : but sin is a reproach to any people.

13. A soft answer turneth away wrath : but grievous words stir up anger.)

14. The eyes of the Lord are in every place, keeping watch upon the evil and the good.

15. A fool despiseth his father's correction : but he that regardeth reproof getteth prudence.

16. A good name is rather to be chosen than great riches, and loving favour than silver and gold.

17. Let another man praise thee, and not thine own mouth,—a stranger, and not thine own lips.

*Old Testament.*

## § 2. FROM THE SAYINGS OF CONFUCIUS.

1. If a man has not done anything wrong, a knock may come at the dead of night, and he will not be startled.

2. Think of your own faults in the first part of the night (when you are awake), and of the faults of others in the latter part (when you are asleep).

3. Even if you should be uncivil to a great man, be sure that you are respectful to a small one.

4. To go a long journey for the sake of offering incense in a distant temple is not so good as showing kindness near home.

5. Use men as you use wood : if one inch is rotten, you do not throw away the whole piece.

6. Do not do unto others what you would not have them do to you.

*Chinese*

§ 3. DIALOGUE BETWEEN NAUSERWAN, THE PERSIAN KING, AND HIS PRIME MINISTER.

✓ *Question.* What should be asked of God?

*Answer.* Safety in the two worlds.

✓ *Q.* What is that which you call the present world?

*A.* That which is of no use in the end.

✓ *Q.* How should we live in this world?

*A.* Like a traveller, who sojourns for the night at an inn and departs with an easy mind in the morning.

*Q.* What is better than living and what is worse than death?

*A.* A good name is better than living, and disgrace is worse than death.

*Q.* What must I do so that I may never require a physician?

*A.* Take much exercise and little food.

*Q.* What is most valued by men?

*A.* Honesty by the honest and money by the dishonest.

*Q.* How should we discover the right path?

*A.* By the light of knowledge.

*Q.* Who should be called learned?

*A.* He who considers himself to be the worst and humblest of all.

*Q.* What kind of inferiority is that which rises above the highest heights?

*A.* Humility.

*Q.* To what could you compare an undutiful son?

*A.* To a sixth finger, which would pain you if you cut it off, and is a trouble to you if you leave it on.

*Persian.*

§ 4. GENERAL.

1. Honesty is the best policy; but those who are honest only because they think it to be the best policy, are half-way to being rogues.

2. A young man is on the way to ruin when he can say without blushing:—"I don't care what others think of me."

3. The only man who never changes his mind is the man who has no mind to change.

4. Never put off till to-morrow what can be done to-day : but there are many things that can be done to-day which ought to be put off for ever.

5. Learn to spare an inferior, to yield to a superior, and to bear with an equal.

6. Four d's are to be avoided—Drink, Debt, Dirt, and the Devil.

*English.*

## NOTES

The text-book in grammar referred to as *Mid. Gram.* is that called *Idiom and Grammar for Middle Schools*, published by Messrs. Macmillan and Co., 1895. The sign § means paragraph. The letter p. means page.

### 1.—Envy and Emulation.

**Envy.** An evil passion which leads a man to hate and (if he can) to injure another for being better than himself, or for possessing something that he does not possess.

**Emulation.** A noble passion, the desire to imitate, equal, or surpass, followed by the effort to bring this desire into effect. Envy springs from hatred and idleness; emulation from admiration and energy.

These two passions are exemplified in the following story:—

There were three young men,—all fellow-students in the same studio or School of Art. Guidotto is the clever artist, who surpasses the other two in the art of painting, and whom these desire to equal.

Brunello, after making a short effort to imitate Guidotto's skill, gives up the competition in despair, but not without forming a malicious hatred of the artist whose skill was so much superior to his own. This man, therefore, represents the spirit of envy.

Lorenzo, on the other hand, represents the spirit of emulation. Instead of giving up the contest in despair he persevered manfully.

The more he perceived his own inferiority, the harder he worked, until at last he produced a picture which he hoped would be declared equal to some of Guidotto's earlier and inferior paintings.

A day had been fixed for the exhibition of pictures and for the award of prizes, and this day had now arrived. But the evening before, when the sun was down, and it was possible to escape detection, Brunello artfully mixed some caustic in the varnish with which Guidotto was about to varnish his picture, and in this way the picture was ruined.

Brunello rejoiced, but Lorenzo was shocked at the ruin of Guidotto's picture. The judges declared that Lorenzo had won the prize; but Lorenzo, suspecting the trick which had been played, refused to take it. The judges therefore gave two prizes—one to Guidotto for his ruined picture, and the other to Lorenzo for his nobleness of heart.

1. **At one.** What noun is qualified by the adjective "one"?

**Produced.** This verb implies two things: firstly, that he had made or painted the picture; secondly, that he brought it forward to be exhibited.

**Masters in the art.** The men most skilled in the art; hence the phrase M.A., or Master of Arts.

**Declared it.** What phrase or sentence does "it" here refer to? *Mid. Gram.* § 151 (c).

**Could not fail to rise.** Would certainly rise.

**Went on.** Continued.

**As he had begun.** What kind of conjunction is "as," and what does it mean? *Mid. Gram.* § 291 (h).

**2. Performance.** Work, viz. the picture produced by Gnidotto.

**Fellow - scholars.** Scholars or students in the same school of art. "Fellow" is here in apposition with "scholars." The two nouns are joined together so as to make a compound word.

**Reputation.** Fame, distinction.

**Had acquired.** What is the force of the Past Perfect tense, and why is this tense here appropriate? *Mid. Gram.* § 217.

**Mortified.** Vexed, chagrined, annoyed.

**Conceived.** Formed in his mind.

**Rancorous.** Malicious, spiteful, vindictive.

**To see him.** Which infinitive is this? See *Mid. Gram.* § 235 (b).

**He had gained.** Point out the object to the verb "gained." *Mid. Gram.* § 179 and § 230.

**Lose the credit.** In what mood is "lose"? *Mid. Gram.* § 233 (a).

**To decry.** To cry down, that is, to declare a thing to be worthless, or worth much less than others declare it to be.

**Approbation.** Praise, approval, admiration.

**Insinuation.** A hint or suggestion made to some one's discredit: an artful imputation, not expressed in plain words, but only hinted.

**Masters.** Teachers. Here "masters" is not used in the same sense as in par. 1.

**Affected.** Pretended.

**Represent.** Describe, declare.

**Lucky hit.** A fortunate accident.

**Reputed author.** Alleged author; the man who was the author by repute only, but not in fact.

**Repeat.** Do over again.

**3. Not so.** This is an idiomatic phrase. Some verb is understood, such as "did not act so." On the use of "so" see *Mid. Gram.* § 154.

**Novice.** Beginner, a new and inexperienced workman. What verb is understood between "though" and "novice"? *Mid. Gram.* § 322.

**Sincerest.** Most genuine, unaffected, hearty. What noun is qualified by "sincerest"?

**Fired.** Incited, stimulated, urged on.

**Receive.** In what mood is this verb, and what is the object after it? *Mid. Gram.* § 233 (a) and § 179.

**One day.** In what case is "day"? *Mid. Gram.* § 386 (5).

**Ardently.** Eagerly, passionately.

**Homage.** Admiration, respect.

**Model.** Pattern, example.

**Which it was, etc.** Why is "which" in the objective case?

**Ambition.** Desire, aim.

**As to excelling.** "As to" is a prepositional phrase, and the Gerund or Verbal noun "excelling" is the object to it. The prepositional phrase "as to" has perhaps arisen out of the clause "so far as it relates to."

**As yet.** At present.

**But with rapture, etc.** He never spoke of him in any terms except (=but) in terms of rapture or delight.

**Disparaged.** Cried down, depreciated, undervalued, spoken of in terms of less praise than he deserved.

**4. Career.** Course.

**First and last.** The first to come into the studio in the morning, and the last to go away in the evening.

**Studio.** The room or building in which the students or scholars met every day to get lessons in painting.

**Practice at home.** Home study.

**His attempts.** The attempts which he was making to paint a good picture, or a picture equal to Guidotto's.

**Distant from.** Inferior to.

**Repeating.** Point out the object to this Transitive verb. *Mid. Gram.* § 318.

**Sensible of progress.** Aware that he was making progress.

**Applause.** Admiration which is not only felt by the mind, but expressed in words or other outward signs.

**To say.** Point out the object to this Transitive verb.

**A Guidotto.** Is this a Proper noun or a Common noun? See *Mid. Gram.* § 36 (b). Is this noun in the Nominative case or in the Objective? See *Mid. Gram.* § 384 (b).

**5. Bear away the palm.** Carry off the prize. The palm-leaf was worn in ancient times as the symbol of victory. Hence to bear away the palm means to come out first, to take the lead, to carry off the prize.

**Competitors.** Rivals; men who competed with him.

**Awhile.** For a short time. (This is the adverbial objective.)

**To contest.** To compete. The verb is pronounced *con-test'*; but the noun is pronounced as *con'-test*.

**Consoled.** Comforted.

**Ill-natured.** Spiteful, unkind.

**Sarcasm.** Something said in a tone of contempt; a sneer; a taunt.

**Petulant.** Peevish, captious, finding fault about trifles, picking holes.

**Criticism.** Expressing judgment on the work of another.

**Worked away.** Continued to work. The adverb "away," when it is compounded with a verb, often signifies continuity.

**His modesty.** The sense of his own inferiority.

**Suffer.** Permit.

**Any piece of his own.** "Piece" here means picture. On the Double Possessive see *Mid. Gram.* § 52.

**Of Guidotto's.** What noun is understood after "Guidotto's"?

**6. Exhibit.** Display.

**Solemnly.** Formally.

Analyse each clause of the first sentence according to the model given in page 139 of *Mid. Gram.*

**A.** There was a certain day in the year—*Principal clause.*

**B.** On which it was customary for all the scholars to exhibit their best performance in a public hall — *Adjective clause to A.*

**C.** Where their respective merits were solemnly judged by a number of select examiners — *Adjective clause to B.*

**D.** And a prize of great value was awarded to the most excellent—*Co-ord. to C.*

**The most excellent.** What noun is understood after "excellent"? The noun "performance."

**Anniversary.** Any day that comes round once a year for some special observance.

**Was to excel.** Was intended or likely to excel.

**Before executed.** Is "before" here an adverb or a conjunction?

**He had just finished, etc.** Finished exactly by that time, namely, by the evening before the exhibition.

**But to heighten.** Here "to heighten" is the Simple or Noun-Infinitive standing as object to the preposition "but." *Mid. Gram.* § 235 (d).

**Heighten the colour.** Give a gloss to the colour.

**Artfully.** Cunningly.

**Phial.** A glass vessel or bottle in



which chemical mixtures are placed. Another form of this word is "vial."

**Caustic.** Burning, having the power to burn whatever it touches.

**Laid it on.** What noun does "it" here stand for?

**Satisfaction.** A sense of being satisfied or contented.

**Against the morrow.** In preparation for the morrow.

**7. With beating heart.** A heart beating with suspense.

**Application.** Industry, assiduity.

**Hoped might appear.** What conjunction is understood between these two verbs? See *Mid. Gram.* § 291 (a) and § 317.

**Humbly.** Modestly.

**Inferior to.** On the use of "to" instead of "than" (after comparatives of the Latin form) see *Mid. Gram.* § 137.

**8. Were introduced.** Why is this verb in the Plural number, although the subject is Singular? See *Mid. Gram.* § 39 and § 396.

**By drawing up.** Parse "up." See *Mid. Gram.* § 269. Is "drawing" here a Verbal noun or a Verbal adjective?

**Went up.** Advanced. Parse "up."

**They anticipated.** Point out the object to this verb. See *Mid. Gram.* § 179 and § 320.

**Blotched.** Danbed, smudged.

**Dead surface.** "Dead" here means lifeless, giving no impression of life or animation.

**9. Dismal.** Distressing, lamentable.

**Agony.** Violent outburst.

**The vile Brunello—distress.** In this sentence point out the Subject, the Adjunct to the Subject, the Finite verb, the Complement to the Finite verb, and the Adjunct to the Predicate.

**Affected.** Touched with grief, distressed.

**Little less.** Not much less. See *Mid. Gram.* § 374.

**Than Guidotto himself.** What verb is understood after "himself"? See *Mid. Gram.* § 291 (g).

**When only half-finished.** What Finite verb is understood after "when"? See *Mid. Gram.* § 322.

**Basely.** From a base or dishonourable motive.

**Before it was injured.** Is "before" here an Adverb, or a Preposition, or a Conjunction?

**10. Generous warmth.** Unselfish or disinterested emotion.

**Struck.** Impressed.

**Adjudge.** Allot after taking judgment.

**Artist.** Painter.

**Suffrages.** Favourable votes.

**Take the reward, etc.** Turn the sentence ending with the word "treachery" from the Direct to the Indirect narration, by the method shown in *Mid. Gram.* § 434, etc. "He begged him to take the reward that merit would undoubtedly have earned for him, had the basest malice and envy not defrauded him of it. He told him that it was honour enough to himself to be accounted his second; and he added that if he might hereafter aspire to equal him, it should be by means of fair competition, not by the aid of treachery."

**Defrauded.** Cheated.

**Accounted.** Reckoned.

**Your second.** Next best or second best to you.

**11. Disinterested.** Unselfish, generous.

Analyse each clause of this paragraph according to the model shown in *Mid. Gram.* p. 139.

**A. Lorenzo's disinterested conduct** excited the warmest admiration among the judges—*Principal clause.*

**B. Who at length determined—***Co-ord. to A.*

C. That for this time there should be two equal prizes distributed, declaring—*Noun-clause to B.*

D. That Lorenzo was entitled to that for generosity and nobleness of heart—*Noun-clause to C.*

E. If Guidotto had deserved the prize for painting—*Adverb clause to D.*

### WORDS.

1. **Painting.** Paint, picture (Latin form), picturesque.

**Merit.** Merit (*verb*), merit (*noun*), meritorious.

**Admiration.** Admire, admirer, admirable, admirably.

**Profession.** Profess, professedly.

2. **Eyes.** Ocular (Latin form), inoculate.

**Acquired.** Acquirement, acquisitive, acquisition.

**Studies.** Study (*verb*), study (*noun*), studio, studious, studiously.

**Mortified.** Mortal, mortify, mortification.

**Conceived.** Conceive, conceit, conceited, conceitedly, conception.

**Credit.** Credit (*verb*), credit (*noun*), creditable, credulous, credulity, creed.

**Judges.** Judge (*verb*), judge (*noun*), judgment, judicial, judicious, judicially, judiciously.

**Secret.** Secret (*noun*), secret (*adjective*), secrete (*verb*), secretly.

**Author.** Authorise, authority, authoritative.

**Repeat.** Repeatedly, repetition.

3. **Novice.** Novitiate, novel, novelty, new.

**Extent.** Extend, extensive, extension, extensively.

**Ardently.** Ardent, ardour.

**Equal.** Equalise, equality, equally, equation, equator.

**Excelling.** Excel, excellent, excellently, excellence.

4. **Content.** Contented, contentedly, contentment, contain.

**Scholars.** School, scholastic, scholarly.

**Devoted.** Devote, devotedly, devotion, devout, devotee.

**Please.** Pleasure, pleasant, pleasantly.

**Sensible.** Sense, sensation, sensitive, sensibly.

**Progress.** Pro'-gress (*noun*), pro'-gress' (*verb*), progressive, progressively.

**Received.** Receive, receipt; receptive, reception.

5. **Competitors.** Compete, competitive, competition.

**Point.** Pointed, pointedly, punctual (Latin form), punctuation, puncture.

**Criticism.** Critic, critical, critically, criticise, criticism.

6. **Day.** Daily, diurnal (Latin form), journal.

**Year.** Yearly, annual (Latin form).

**Customary.** Custom, costume, accustom.

**Public.** Publish, publicly, publication, publicity.

**Solemnly.** Solemn, solemnise, solemnity.

**Prize.** Prize (*noun*), prize (*verb*).

**Heighten.** High, highly, height, heighten.

**Artfully.** Art, artful, artfully, artist, artistic, artistically.

**Convey.** Conveyance.

**Effect.** Effect (*verb*), effect (*noun*), effective, effectual, efficient, efficacy.

**Destroy.** Destruction, destructive, destructively.

7. **Application.** Apply, applicant, application.

- Appear.** Apparently, appearance, apparent, apparition.
8. **Company.** Companion, companionable, accompany (*verb*).
- Expectations.** Expect, expectant, expectantly.
- Surface.** Superficial (Latin form), superficially.
- Confused.** Confuse, confusion, confusedly, confound.
9. **Grief.** Grievous, grievously, grievance, ag-grieve, ag-gravate.
- Affected.** Affect, affection, affectation.
- Injured.** Injure, injurious, injuriously, injury.
10. **Spectators.** Spectacle, a-spect.
- Sympathised.** Sympathy, sympathetic.
- Envy.** Envy (*noun*), envy (*verb*), invidious (Latin form), invidiously, envious, enviously.
11. **Conduct.** Con-duct (*noun*), con-duct' (*verb*), conduce, conducive, conductor.
- Entitled.** Title, titular, entitle.

## 2.—The Soldier's Funeral.

This poem describes the funeral of a horse-soldier, who, though he had not been slain or wounded in battle, was struck with a fatal illness in the country where the battle was fought. He was sent back to his native land as an invalid, but died within sight of the shore. The poem was written of a soldier who had served in Egypt in the late campaign.

The first stanza gives a description of the funeral procession; the second of the circumstances of the soldier's death; the third of the burial scene.

1. This stanza is an example of a long compound sentence, in which the connective words are omitted, as shown in *Mid. Gram.* § 310. The central fact in this picture is the funeral procession, as the soldier's

body is carried out to its burial, and the separate clauses express the details of the picture.

**Rolls.** Why is this and all the other verbs (except the last) in the present tense? See *Mid. Gram.* § 212. What is the name given to this use of the Present Indefinite tense?

**Muffled.** Covered with cloth so as to deaden and soften the sound.

**Rolls.** The sound of a drum is said to roll, because the sound is continuous from note to note, rolling on the air as a wheel rolls on the ground. Show how this Transitive verb has become Intransitive. *Mid. Gram.* § 180 (b).

**Stately step.** Their step is called stately, because in the funeral procession they march slowly along, each man keeping step with every other man.

**Black crape.** Crape is a thin transparent kind of cloth, dyed black and used as a mark of mourning. A strip of crape is generally attached to the arm of a coat.

**Carbine.** A short musket carried by horse-soldiers. It is shorter than a rifle, but longer than a pistol. Every carbine in this description is turned towards the ground in token of sorrow.

**Measured tread.** This means almost the same thing as "stately step" in the second line. Every man measures his steps in order to keep pace with every other man.

**Riderless horse.** In the funerals of horse-soldiers it is customary for the horse to be led behind harnessed, but without its rider.

**White plumes.** These are the ostrich feathers, or imitation of ostrich feathers, which are placed over the bier or coffin.

**Helmet and sword.** The helmet is a tall cap worn to protect and adorn the head. When a soldier is buried his weapons are placed on

the pall. In all countries it was once the custom to bury a man's favourite things with him in the grave. Hence the custom of Hindu *sati*, by which the favourite wife was burnt with her husband. Hence to this day whatever property a man used most or liked best is given to the Mahá Brahman or funeral priest.

**Pall.** A large black cloth thrown over the coffin or bier.

**2. Battle-plain.** What kind of noun is this? *Mid. Gram.* § 456 (2).

**Over the slain.** Over the dead bodies of the slain. Every step which he took was over or among dead bodies; but he himself escaped unhurt.

**The slain.** The noun "men" is understood after "slain."

**The brand.** The sword; so called from its flashing brightness or flashing motion. A sword when it is unsheathed for action is in poetry generally called a "brand."

**Ball.** Bullet, from the rifles of the enemy.

**To die.** Which kind of Infinitive is this? *Mid. Gram.* § 236 (a).

**His native land.** The land of his birth.

**'Twas hard.** It was a hard or sad thing.

**The dead.** The noun "men" is understood after "dead."

**Or e'er.** Before. This phrase has the force of a Subordinative conjunction of time, and is used only in poetry.

**His welcome.** The words of welcome. "Welcome" is a noun formed from "well come!"—the Imperative mood of the verb "come," with the adverb "well" placed before it.

**Cliffs.** The rocks by which the coast of England is bounded. The soldier died on board ship within sight of the shore.

**Lay.** Give the two forms, Transi-

tive and Intransitive, of this verb, and mention other examples. *Mid. Gram.* § 186.

**Turf of the soldier's sleep.** The turf under which the soldier is sleeping. Turf is grass closely tufted or matted together.

**3. The wailing sound.** The sound resembling that of wailing or mourning.

**Volley.** A large number of shots fired off together. At military funerals the soldiers who form the procession of mourners fire a volley into the air on each side of the grave as soon as the coffin is lowered into the earth.

**Blessing.** A blessing is uttered over the coffin by the priest at such times. The soul of the dead is commended to God.

**One moment's pause.** There was a pause or silence for one moment. On this use of the Possessive case see *Mid. Gram.* § 64 (4).

**Wan.** Pale, bloodless.

**Ho knelt him down.** Is the verb "knelt" Transitive or Intransitive? If it is Intransitive, show why it takes the object "him." *Mid. Gram.* § 184.

**New raised.** Newly raised. "New" here stands for the adverb "newly."

**Bowed.** Bent, lowered.

## WORDS.

- 1. Air.** Aerial, airy.  
**Warriors.** War (*verb*), war (*noun*), warlike.  
**Sound.** Sonorous, sonorously, resonant.  
**Slow.** Sloth, sluggard, slowly.
- 2. Passed.** Pass, passage, passenger.  
**Familiar.** Family, familiar, familiarise, familiarity.  
**Hand.** Handy, manual (Latin form).
- 3. Ceased.** Cease, incessant, incessantly, cessation.

**Poor.** Poverty, poorly, pauper (Latin form), pauperise.

**Son.** Sonship, sonlike, filial (Latin form).

### 3.—Maxims on Industry and Thrift.

1. **Gives.** Distinguish the two objects of this verb. *Mid. Gram.* § 177.

**To find.** To what class of Transitive verbs does "find" belong? Point out (a) the object, (b) the complement to this verb. *Mid. Gram.* § 178.

**His works.** His writings.

**Gratified.** Pleased, delighted.

**Incident.** A passing event, casual occurrence.

**To relate.** Point out the object to this verb. *Mid. Gram.* § 179 and § 320.

**Were collected.** Is the Plural number of this verb correct after a subject in the Singular? *Mid. Gram.* § 39 and § 396.

**People.** Persons. *Mid. Gram.* § 77.

**Auction.** A public sale in which one buyer is invited to outbid (offer a higher price than) another.

**The hour, etc.** In what case is this "noun"? Explain the construction. *Mid. Gram.* § 384 (5) and § 399 (2).

**Being come.** "Being" can be used instead of "having," in the same way as "is" can be used for "has." *Mid. Gram.* § 206.

**Conversing.** Talking together.

**The badness of the times.** The high prices of food, etc., the low price of labour, the heavy taxes. The times are said to be "bad" when from these or any other causes men find it difficult to live in comfort.

**Would have.** Wish to have. Why is the Subjunctive mood here used rather than the Indicative? *Mid. Gram.* § 230 (4).

**In short.** In few words. On this adverb or adverbial phrase see *Mid. Gram.* § 267 (3).

**A word, etc.** A wise man does not need many words. "A" is here used in the sense of "one." *Mid. Gram.* § 115, *Note*.

**They joined, etc.** They were agreed, or they were unanimous.

**Speak his mind.** Express unreservedly what was in his mind.

**He proceeded.** He began to speak.

#### § 1. INDUSTRY.

2. **Friends.** In what case is this noun? *Mid. Gram.* § 384 (4).

**Said he.** On the position of the Subject in this place see *Mid. Gram.* § 416 (f).

**Those laid on, etc.** Is "those" here a Demonstrative adjective or a Demonstrative pronoun? See *Mid. Gram.* § 152.

**Laid on.** Imposed.

**Ones.** Parse this word. *Mid. Gram.* § 153.

**We had to pay.** What is the object to the verb "pay"? *Mid. Gram.* § 179 and § 320.

**Discharge them.** Get rid of them; that is, pay them off.

**Grievous.** Burdensome.

**As much.** Some noun like "money" is understood after "much." This noun is in the Objective case. Explain how a noun in the Objective case can be used after a Passive verb like "we are taxed." *Mid. Gram.* § 193.

**Ease.** Exempt, relieve.

**Commissioners.** Revenue collectors.

**Abatement.** Deduction.

**By allowing.** Is "allowing" here a Verbal noun or a Verbal adjective?

3. **A hard government.** An oppressive or despotic government.

**To be employed.** Which kind of Infinitive is this? *Mid. Gram.* § 263 (b).

**Absolutely.** Actually. Sloth or idleness makes our days actually fewer than they might have been, by the diseases to which an idle man is subject.

**Sloth, like rust, etc.** Iron, if it is allowed to rust through disuse, decays more rapidly than iron which is rubbed and kept bright by use. In the same way a man who allows his faculties to rust in idleness dies sooner than one who keeps his faculties fresh and bright by steady work or occupation. Sloth consumes or destroys a man faster than labour wears him out.

**Faster.** This is an adverb in the Comparative degree, having the same form as the adjective, like the other examples given in *Mid. Gram.* § 262 (a).

**Squander.** Waste.

**Is made of.** What is the object to "of"? *Mid. Gram.* § 179 and § 320.

**How much more.** The noun "time" is understood after "more."

**Poultry.** Fowls, cocks and hens.

**Sleeping.** This word occurs twice in the last sentence of par. 3. Parse it in each case.

**4. Prodigality.** Wastefulness, extravagance.

**Always proves, etc.** Is always found to be, etc. "Proves" is here an Intransitive verb of Incomplete predication. *Mid. Gram.* § 182.

**Little enough.** Too little for the purpose.

**Be up and doing.** The adverb "up" is here coupled with the participle "doing" by the conjunction "and," because both are complements to the verb "be." *Mid. Gram.* § 182.

**To the purpose.** What is conducive or adapted to the purpose we have in view.

**Diligence.** Industry, the opposite to sloth or idleness.

**Do more.** "More" is here used as a Noun. See *Mid. Gram.* p. 142.

**With less perplexity.** With less difficulty and anxiety.

**Must trot.** Must be always running: will have no time to sit down and rest.

**Overtake.** Catch up. A man who rises late from his bed is behind time all day long, and he can scarcely catch up or overtake his business by the evening.

**Drive the business.** A man must be master of his business, just as a driver must be master of his horse; if not, the business, like an unruly horse, will run its own course and bring its master into trouble.

**Adage.** Proverb, popular saying.

**Early to bed, etc.** The habit of going early to bed, &c. "Early" is here used like a noun, as in the sentence, "slow and steady wins the race."

**5. What signifies?** Of what use is it?

**Bestir ourselves.** Arouse and exert ourselves.

**Need not wish.** The meaning is:—industry need not wish, because it can get what it wants. Parse "wish." *Mid. Gram.* § 233 (a). Whenever "need" is followed by a negative and by another verb, the third person Singular is *need*, and not *needs*. See *Mid. Gram.* p. 219.

**Fasting.** Hungry.

**Without pains.** Without labour or effort.

**A trade.** A business or calling of any kind either in commerce or in handicraft.

**Estate.** Landed property. A man who earns his living by some trade or occupation is as well off as a man who owns a landed estate.

**An office, etc.** A man who has a private calling is as well off as a man who holds some public office or appointment.

Or neither the estate, etc. Here "or" means "otherwise." What kind of conjunction is "or"? *Mid. Gram.* § 111 (b).

Dare not enter. Parse "enter." *Mid. Gram.* § 233 (a). The third Sing. of the verb "dare" is *dare*, and not *dares*, when "not" is joined to it. Appendix B, p. 218.

Bailiff. The officer employed to go to a debtor's house and compel him to pay up or give security for payment.

Constable. The officer employed to arrest a man for debt or any other cause.

While despair, etc. What kind of conjunction is "while"? *Mid. Gram.* § 288 (c).

What though. Although. What kind of conjunction is this? *Mid. Gram.* § 291 (f).

No treasure. No sum of money hidden in the earth.

Legacy. Property left by will.

## § 2. THRIFT.

6. So much for industry. Thus far have I spoken about industry.

My friends. In what case is this noun? *Mid. Gram.* § 384 (4).

If we would make. Why is the Subjunctive mood here used? *Mid. Gram.* § 230 (4). "If we desire to make."

Make our industry. What kind of Transitive verb is "make" and what is its complement? *Mid. Gram.* § 178.

As he gets, etc. If he knows not how to save in the same way as he gets.

Keep his nose, etc. Have his face always turned towards the grindstone;—never have any rest from labour. In sharpening a knife on a grindstone a man keeps his face close to the grindstone, so as almost to touch it.

All his life. In what case is "life"? *Mid. Gram.* § 386 (5).

Grindstone. A circular stone which is turned round for sharpening knives, &c.

A groat. A small coin equivalent to 4 pence. In what case is "groat"? *Mid. Gram.* § 386 (5).

If you would be. If you wish to be.

The Indies. The West India islands.

Outgoings. Expenditure.

Incomings. Receipts, revenue, income.

Spain. The West India islands were discovered by Columbus, whose voyage across the Atlantic from Europe to America was undertaken at the cost of the King of Spain.

7. Away with. Do away with, renounce, give up. This is in the Imperative mood. In what sense is it here used? *Mid. Gram.* § 223.

What maintains. Explain this use of the Relative. *Mid. Gram.* § 159 (b).

Punch. A kind of liquor.

Diet. Food.

Entertainment. Entertaining or receiving guests, inviting friends to a feast.

Can be no great matter. Cannot make much difference; cannot cost much.

Many a little. On the phrase "many a" see *Mid. Gram.* § 100. "Little" is here used as a noun. *Mid. Gram.* p. 142.

Mickle. Much. This word is now obsolete except in the proverb quoted. It is here used as a noun. *Mid. Gram.* p. 142.

Dainties. Delicate and costly dishes.

Who dainties love. Explain the use of "who" in this place? *Mid. Gram.* § 159 (a). "Those who love dainties."

Shall beggars prove. What

kind of verb is "prove" in this place? Is the word "beggars" a subjective or an objective complement? *Mid. Gram.* § 182, note 1.

**Shall prove.** Why is "shall" used here instead of "will"? Because something more than merely future time is here meant. There is an implied command or necessity by which dainty livers must become beggars at last. *Mid. Gram.* § 207 (b).

**8. Got together.** Assembled.

**Knick-knacks.** Trifles that please the eye, but are of no real use.

**Goods.** Here there is a play upon the word "goods." First it means "goods" in the sense of property, and then "goods" as the opposite to "evils." Properly speaking, however, "goods" in the sense of property can only be used in the Plural number. As the opposite to *evil*, it is used in the Singular only.

**You expect.** What conjunction is understood after this Transitive verb, and what is its object? *Mid. Gram.* § 317 and § 316 (b).

**They will sell cheap.** Will be cheap when they are sold. The verb "sell," though it is in the Active voice, is here used in a Passive sense. See *Mid. Gram.* § 195 (a).

**No occasion for them.** No use for them.

**You expect — dear to you.** Analyse each clause of this sentence according to the model given in *Mid. Gram.* p. 139.

A. You expect—*Prin. clause.*

B. (That) they will sell cheap—*Noun-clause to A.*

C. And perhaps they may sell for less than—*Co-ord. to A.*

D. (What) they cost—*Noun-clause to C.* § 284 (b).

E. But they must be dear to you—*Co-ord. to A and C.*

F. If you have no occasion for them—*Adverb clause to E.*

**Remember.** Point out the object to this verb.

**Buy what, etc.** In what sense is the Imperative mood here used? *Mid. Gram.* § 223.

**Necessaries.** Things that are necessary. An adjective used as a noun.

**Thou shalt sell.** Thou wilt be compelled to sell. Observe here the force of "shalt." *Mid. Gram.* § 207 (b).

**9. Superfluities.** This word is the opposite to "necessaries."

**Six months' credit.** In what case is "credit," and why? *Mid. Gram.* § 193. "Credit" means trust. A purchaser who does not pay cash is said to buy on credit or on trust.

**To attend it.** To attend the auction. "It" stands here for "auction."

**That perhaps, etc.** "That" means "the offer of six months' credit." Is "that" here a Demonstrative pronoun or a Demonstrative adjective? *Mid. Gram.* § 149 and § 152 (c).

**Ready money.** Cash.

**To be fine.** To look grand or rich.

**Creditor.** The man from whom you have borrowed money.

**Poor.** Groundless, invalid. "A poor excuse" is an idiomatic phrase for an excuse that has no foundation.

**Pitiful.** Deserving of pity or contempt; contemptible.

**Sneaking.** Servile, cringing, timid.

**Veracity.** Truthfulness.

**Downright.** Direct; hence unreserved, unqualified.

**Of all spirit.** Of all courage.

**Sack.** A large bag used for holding goods, such as wheat, potatoes, etc.

**It is hard, etc.** Point out the phrase to which "it" here refers. *Mid. Gram.* § 151 (c).



**10. Who should issue.** The verb is here in the Subjunctive mood, because its clause is subordinate to a conditional clause going before. Both verbs express a condition or supposition.

**Edict.** A proclamation or order published by a king.

**A gentleman.** In what case is this noun? *Mid. Gram.* § 386 (6).

**Breach.** Violation, infringement.

**Privileges.** Rights.

**Tyrannical.** Fit only for a tyrant; hence, oppressive, despotic.

**About to put yourself.** Explain the use of "about" before an Infinitive mood. What kind of Infinitive is it? *Mid. Gram.* § 235 (d).

**At his pleasure.** Whenever he likes.

**11. Your bargain.** The thing for which you bargained.

**Think little.** Take little or no thought. "Little" has a negative sense, and means "not much"; but "a little" has an affirmative sense, and means "some at least." *Mid. Gram.* § 374.

**Of payment.** About or concerning payment.

**Aware.** On this form of adverb see *Mid. Gram.* § 267 (4). On the use of adverbs as complements to verbs of Incomplete Predication, see § 270 (b).

**Before you are prepared, etc.** Is the word "before" in this place a preposition, or an adverb, or a conjunction?

**The term.** The time within which payment is due.

**At first.** On this form of adverbial phrase see *Mid. Gram.* § 267 (3).

**Lessens.** This is properly a Transitive verb and signifies "makes less." How has it become here Intransitive? *Mid. Gram.* § 180 (b).

**Heels, shoulders.** Time has been represented in pictures and in poetry as an old man with wings at the back

of his shoulders. Another divinity, the messenger of the gods (by name Mercury), was represented as a young man with little wings at the back of his heels. Here Time is said to have wings both at his shoulders and at his heels, because in the case of debtors he flies very rapidly.

**12. Too much.** More than enough.

**Though excellent things.** Though (they are) excellent things. On the omission of the verb after "though" see *Mid. Gram.* § 322.

**Blasted.** Struck down, destroyed, as by a blast of lightning.

**Uncharitable.** Unkind in judgment or in conduct.

**To want it.** To want the blessing of heaven.

**Job.** A patriarch, in the Old Testament, who was severely afflicted, but was afterwards restored to his former prosperity.

**13. Harangue (harang')**—a speech delivered in a public assembly.

**Doctrine.** The lesson taught.

**Practised.** Observe that the verb is spelt "practise," and the noun "practice."

**Opened.** Began. Explain how this Transitive verb has become Intransitive. *Mid. Gram.* § 180 (b).

**Almanac.** A book or chart containing the date and month of each day in the year.

**Digested.** Thoroughly absorbed into his mind, in the same way as the stomach absorbs food into the blood.

**Dropped.** Let fall, uttered; but here it means "written."

**Topics.** Subjects.

**Maxims.** Prudential sayings.

**Must have tired.** Would certainly have tired.

**My vanity.** My self-conceit.

**Gleanings.** Scraps of wisdom picked up from many different sources. To glean is to pick up ears

of wheat, etc., which have been unintentionally left on the field by reapers.

**Sense.** Common sense, wisdom.

**To be the better.** To profit to that extent. Explain "the." *Mid. Gram.* § 256 (c).

**For the echo of it.** The old man's harangue is called the echo or repetition of the almanac, because almost everything that he had said in his speech was taken or repeated from the almanac. "For" here means "on account of." *Mid. Gram.* § 276 (a).

**A little.** This is an adverb qualifying the adverb "longer."

### WORDS.

**Courteous.** Courtesy, courteously, court (*noun or verb*).

1. **Gratified.** Gratify, gratification, gratuity, gratuitously; gratis.

**Incident.** Incidental, incidentally.

**People.** Popular, popularly, popularise; populous, population.

**Merchants.** Merchandise, mercantile, com-merce, mercenary.

**Times.** Time, temporal (Latin form), temporary, temporise, tense.

**One.** Unit (Latin form), unity, oneness, unify, only.

**Clean.** Cleanse, cleanly.

**Able.** Ably, able (*verb or adjective*), ability, en-able (*verb*).

**Advise.** Advise (*verb*), advice (*noun*).

**Joined.** Join, joint, junction, jointly.

**Proceeded.** Proceed, procedure, process, proceeding.

2. **Pay.** Payment, payee, payable.

**Pride.** Proud, proudly.

**Folly.** Fool, foolish, foolishly, be-fool.

**Abatement.** Abate.

3. **Service.** Serve, servant, servile, servilely, servitude.

**Absolutely.** Absolve, absolute, absolution.

**Life.** Lively, vital (Latin form).

**Consumes.** Consume, consumption, consumptive.

**Labour.** Laborious, laboriously, e-laborate.

**Necessary.** Necessity, necessitate, necessarily.

4. **Precious.** Price, ap-preciate.

**Tells.** Tell, tale.

**Proves.** Proof, probable, probably, probability.

**Diligence.** Diligent, diligently.

**Industry.** Industrious (having the quality of industry); industrial (pertaining to some particular branch of industry).

**Night.** Nightly, nocturnal (Latin form).

**Heathy.** Health, heal, hale, whole.

5. **Signifies.** Sign, signal, signify, significant, signification.

**Pain.** Pain, painful, penal, penalty.

**Office.** Official, officially, officiate.

**Profit.** Profit (*verb*), profit (*noun*), profitable, proficient.

**Debts.** Debt, debtor, debit, debitable.

**Despair.** Despair (*noun or verb*), desperate, despairingly.

**Rich.** Richly, riches, en-rich, enrichment.

**Know.** Knowledge, knowingly.

**Mother.** Motherly, motherhood; maternity (Latin form), maternal.

6. **Thriff.** Thrifty, thriftily, thrive.

**Successful.** Succeed, success, successful, successfully.

**Nose.** Nasal.

7. **Expensive.** Expense, expensively, expend.

**Vice.** Vicious, viciously, vitiate.

**Matter.** Material, materially.

- Feasts.** Feast (*noun*), feast (*verb*), festive, festival, festivity.
- Eat.** Eatable, edible (Latin form).
8. **Sale.** Sell, sale, saleable.
- Dear.** Dearly, dearth.
9. **Madness.** Mad, madly, madden, madness.
- Superfluities.** Superfluous, superfluity.
- Attend.** Attentive, attention, attentively.
- Liberty.** Liberal, liberate, liberally, libertine.
- Creditor.** Creed, credit (*noun*), credit (*verb*), creditor, creditable, creditably.
- Ashamed.** Shame, shameful, shamefully.
- Poverty.** Poor, poorly, pauper (Latin form), pauperise.
10. **Prince.** Principal, principle, principally.
- Breach.** Break.
- Tyrannical.** Tyrant, tyrannise.
11. **Memories.** Memory, memorial, com-memorate, memorable.
- Satisfy.** Satisfaction, satisfactory, satisfactorily.
- Mind.** Mindful, mental (Latin form).
- Term.** Terminus, terminate, determine.
- Long.** Longitude, length, lengthy, lengthen.
12. **Reason.** Reason (*noun*), reason (*verb*), rational (Latin form), rationally, reasonable.
- Depend.** Dependent, dependence, dependant (a person who depends).
- Prudence.** Prudent, prudently, provide, provident, providence.
- Humbly.** Humble, humility, humiliate.
13. **Approved.** Approve, approvingly, approbation.
- Course.** Current, currently, currency, oe-cur.
- Conscious.** Conscience, conscientious.

**Resolved.** Resolute, resolutely, resolution.

#### 4.—Lord Ullin's Daughter.

This is a ballad or short story told in verse. A maiden (who in the poem is called Lord Ullin's daughter) has run away with her lover from her father's house; and Lord Ullin, the father, is in pursuit. They come to the banks of a lake called Lochgyle; and beg the boatman to row them across in spite of the storm that was then raging. The boatman, induced by the entreaties and beauty of the bride, consents, but warns them of the danger of going out on the lake in such a storm. The tramp of horses' feet is heard coming nearer and nearer to the lake. The lovers enter the boat, are caught in the storm, and perish. The father repents too late, and is left on the shore lamenting his daughter's death.

1. **Highlands.** This is the name given to the mountainous parts of Scotland.

**Bound.** Intending to go to the Highlands, after crossing Lochgyle.

**Do not tarry.** Make haste.

**A silver pound.** A silver coin called the pound Scots.

**To row us.** Which kind of Infinitive is this? *Mid. Gram.* § 236 (a).

**Ferry.** A piece of water that must be crossed.

2. **Who be ye** = Who may you be. There is a doubt implied in the Auxiliary verb "may," or in the Subjunctive "be." *Mid. Gram.* § 230 (4).

**Would cross.** Here the subject to the verb is "who" or "that." It is only in poetry that the Relative pronoun in the Nominative case can be thus left out. It is frequently left out in the Objective. *Mid. Gram.* § 179.

3. **Fast.** Rapidly.

**Before.** In front of.

**Three days.** In what case is this noun? *Mid. Gram.* § 386 (5).

**Fled.** What is the Present tense of this verb? *Mid. Gram.* p. 211.

**Glen.** A valley between hills. A lake like Lochgyle is generally in a valley surrounded by hills.

**Should he find.** What conjunction is here omitted? *Mid. Gram.* § 230 (3) and § 416 (e).

**Heather.** A small evergreen shrub that grows wild on the Scottish moors.

**4. Hard behind us.** Close or near behind us. Here the preposition "behind" is qualified by the adverb "hard." *Mid. Gram.* § 253 (a).

**Should they.** Here again the conjunction "if" is omitted. See note in par. 3.

**Cheer.** Console, comfort.

**Bonny.** Winsome, blithe, beautiful.

**5. Out spoke.** Here "out" is part of the verb "spoke"; but in prose the adverb is generally placed after the verb, and not before it. *Mid. Gram.* § 269.

**Hardy.** Brave.

**Wight.** Person. Seldom used except in poetry. When it is used in prose, it generally implies contempt, and signifies the same as "creature."

**Winsome.** Winning, beautiful, bonny.

**6. Are raging white.** Are foaming with the violence of the storm. Here "white" is Adverbial Adjunct to the verb "raging." *Mid. Gram.* §§ 305, 306.

**7. By this.** By this time.

**Grew loud apace.** Grew rapidly louder and louder. "Apace" means "rapidly." On this form of the adverb see *Mid. Gram.* § 267 (2).

**Water - wraith.** Water - spirit. "Wraith" means spirit or goblin. The howling of the storm is here ascribed to a water-wraith or storm-demon.

**Scowl of heaven.** The scowling or threatening appearance of the sky.

**Grew dark.** Their faces looked dark, because they could scarcely see each other in the darkness.

**8. Drearer.** More dismal.

**Their trampling.** The trampling of their horses' hoofs.

**9. Haste thee.** On this use of a personal pronoun after an Intransitive verb see *Mid. Gram.* § 184.

**Gather.** Explain how this Transitive verb has become Intransitive. *Mid. Gram.* § 180 (b).

**10. A stormy land, etc.** A land beaten by storm.

**A stormy sea, etc.** In what case is "sea"? See *Mid. Gram.* § 384 (5). The participle "being" is here understood.

**Too strong, etc.** Too strong for the hand of man to resist.

**11. Prevailing.** Prevailing against the strength and skill of the boatman.

**Wailing.** Sorrow, lamentation.

**12. Sore dismayed.** Terribly alarmed or frightened.

**Shade.** Darkness.

**Did discover.** Detected.

**14. Lashed the shore.** Dashed against the shore.

**Return or aid preventing.** Rendering it impossible either for her to return to land or for him to go to her rescue.

## WORDS.

**1. Chieftain.** Chief (*adjective*), chief (*noun*), capital (Latin form of *adjective*).

**Give.** Gift, gifted, giver.

**3. Fled.** Flee, flight, flighty.

**Blood.** Bloody, sanguinary (Latin form).

**4. Cheer.** Cheer (*verb*), cheer (*noun*). cheerful, cheerfully.

**Slain.** Slay, slaughter.

**6. Danger.** Danger (*noun*), en-

danger (*verb*), dangerous, dangerously.

7. Grew. Grow, growth.

Speaking. Speak, speech.

9. Tempest. Tempestuous.

10. Land. Terrestrial (Latin form).

Sea. Marine or maritime (Latin form).

Human. Man (*noun*), human (Latin form), humane, humanity.

11. Prevailing. Prevail, prevalent, prevalence.

Fatal. Fate, fatal, fatalism, fatality.

14. Preventing. Prevent, prevention, preventive.

### 5.—Anonymous Letters.

1. Lectured. Admonished.

Anonymous. Not signed by the writer; having no name.

Writing. Is this word a Verbal noun or a Verbal adjective?

We are sorry. What conjunction is understood after "sorry"? *Mid. Gram.* § 317.

The resort. The plan or practice to which they resort.

Least expected. What part of speech is "least" here?

Not too strong. Not stronger than they ought to be.

Honour. A sense of truth and honesty. "Honour" does not here mean "fame," "renewn."

So questionable. Of such doubtful honesty.

2. It signifies. It implies or shows.

Moral courage. Here "moral" is opposed to "physical." *Physical* courage consists in facing bodily danger. *Moral* courage consists in facing rebuke, displeasure, discredit, etc.

Dare not. Is "dare" here Singular or Plural? It is singular; the

final "s" of the third person singular in this verb is omitted when it is followed by a negative and by an Infinitive verb. *Mid. Gram.* p. 218.

Face. In what mood is this verb? *Mid. Gram.* § 233 (a).

Consequence of. What is the object here to the preposition "of"?

A. It signifies—*Principal clause*.

B. That the writer lacks moral courage to affix his name—*Noun-clause to A*.

C. And either cannot face the consequences—*Co-ord. to B*.

D. Or dare not face the consequences of—*Co-ord. to C*.

E. What he writes—*Noun-clause to D*.

When written, etc. What verb is understood after "when"? *Mid. Gram.* § 322.

To wound. Which kind of Infinitive is this? *Mid. Gram.* § 236 (a).

Cowardly. Coward-like, befitting a coward.

Even if written. What words are understood after "if"? *Mid. Gram.* § 322.

Best of intentions. What noun is understood after the adjective "best"? The noun "intention"; best intention of intentions.

Such letters. What kind of adjective is "such"? *Mid. Gram.* § 105 (c).

Damaging. Damaging to the person who is suspected of having written the letter.

Clue. Clue is literally a ball of thread. Hence it has come to mean a thread or link of connection, by which a secret may be found out.

Irreparably. Beyond recovery.

Estimation. Good opinion.

Fastens. Fixes itself. Fastens is properly a Transitive verb. Show how it has become Intransitive. See *Mid. Gram.* § 180 (b).

Party. Person or persons.

3. Libellous. Defamatory, making

a false charge that injures the reputation of the person charged.

**Intimation.** Information.

### WORDS.

1. **Lecture.** Lecture (*verb*), lecture (*noun*).

**Practise.** Practise (*verb*), practice (*noun*), practical, practically, practicable.

**People.** Populace, popular, popularly, population, popularise.

**Honour.** Honour (*verb*), honour (*noun*), honourable, honourably.

**Questionable.** Question (*verb*), question (*noun*), questionable, questionably.

2. **Moral.** Morality, morally, moralise, morals (*noun*).

**Name.** Nominal (Latin form), namely, de-nominate.

**Cowardly.** Coward, cowardly, cowardice.

**Intentions.** Intend, intent, intention, intentional, intentionality.

**Excite.** Excitement, excited, excitedly.

**Suspicious.** Suspect, suspicious, suspiciously.

**Person.** Personal, personally, personify, im-personate.

**Estimation.** Esteem, estimate, estimation.

**Grave.** Gravely, ag-gravate.

3. **Letters.** Letter, literate, il-literate, literal, literally.

**Received.** Receipt, receptacle, receptive, reception.

**Destroy.** Destructive, destruction.

**Intimation.** Intimate (*verb*), intimate (*adjective*).

## 6.—Volcano of the Hawaiians.

1. **Few regions.** Show the difference between "few," "a few," and "the few." *Mid. Gram.* § 99.

**Those islands.** Is this noun in

the Nominative case, or is it in the Objective after "than"? *Mid. Gram.* § 135, Note 2, and § 291 (g).

**Level.** Level, like the plains of Northern India. "Mountainous" or "hilly" is the opposite to "level."

**Rim.** Edge, margin, border.

**Subterranean.** Existing underground.

**Spectacle.** Visible object.

**Two miles.** In what case is "miles"? *Mid. Gram.* § 386 (5).

**Perpetual snow.** Snow that never melts or disappears at any time of the year.

**Lava.** The liquid or melted rock thrown up from the earth by the underground heat.

**Cinders.** Ashes, embers.

**Mantle.** A cloth thrown over the head and shoulders. The snow covering the head or peak of these mountains is compared to a mantle.

2. **Tranquil.** Silent, at rest. When a volcano mountain has ceased to be subject to explosion, the volcano is said to be extinct.

**Crater.** Literally a cup or bowl. The mouth of a volcano is called a crater, because its shape is like that of a cup.

**Plays.** Hovers.

**Vapour.** Smoke mixed with steam.

**Hangs.** This verb can be either Transitive or Intransitive. Give the Past tenses of both. *Mid. Gram.* p. 208.

**Like a cloud.** In what case is "cloud"? *Mid. Gram.* § 386 (6).

3. **Tremendous.** Awful, terrific.

**Eruption.** Explosion. A volcano is at certain intervals more quiet than at others. The violent intervals are called periods of eruption.

**Description, imagination.** "Description" pertains to what can be told in *words*; "imagination" to what can be pictured by the *mind*.

**Mountain side.** Parse "mountain." *Mid. Gram.* § 388.

**Cascades.** Waterfalls; here, however, they are of fire, and not of water.

**Living fire.** Fire as active as if it were alive.

**Forming, spreading.** Are these words Verbal nouns or Verbal adjectives?

**If a stream reach.** Why is this verb in the Subjunctive mood? *Mid. Gram.* § 230 (4).

**The other element.** Water.

**4. Superstitious.** Worshipping idols or visible objects as if they were living beings and had the power of punishing or rewarding them.

**Hawaiians.** This is the national name of the inhabitants of the Sandwich Islands.

**Ascribe them to, etc.** Believe them to be produced by some god or goddess.

**Name of volcano.** Here "of" is used in the sense of apposition: "the name, volcano."

**Testifies to.** Bears testimony to, indicates.

**Burning mountains.** Viz. Mt. *Ætna* in Sicily, and Mt. *Vesuvius* near Naples.

**Vulcan.** The blacksmith (or iron-smith) of the gods, according to the Greek mythology. He was supposed to have his workshop somewhere inside *Ætna*.

**The home.** In what case is "home"? *Mid. Gram.* § 384 (2).

**Bath.** Bathing-place.

**5. Imaginary.** Fictitious, not real; only imagined to exist.

**Whims and fancies.** Wayward or capricious notions.

**Of her own.** On the double Possessive see *Mid. Gram.* § 145 (c).

**Verge.** Edge, margin. No woman was allowed to touch even the outer edge or base of the mountain; but *Kapiolani* did much more than this, she not only touched the base, but went up the side and down into the crater.

**Might involve.** In what sense is "might" here used? *Mid. Gram.* p. 217 (b). There was no actual certainty, but there was the possibility and risk of the whole island being involved in one fiery tomb if the mountain sacred to *Pélé* were touched by the feet of a woman or if the sacred berries were plucked.

**We are speaking of.** What is the object to the preposition "of"? *Mid. Gram.* § 179 and § 320.

**Fictitious.** Unreal, imaginary.

**6. Bondage.** Slavery, the opposite to freedom.

**Who taught.** Is the Relative here used in a Continuative or a Restrictive sense? *Mid. Gram.* § 163 (b).

**A better way.** A better mode both of living and believing.

**Intercourse with.** The habit of living and associating with.

**Superstitions.** Irrational beliefs.

**Detached itself.** Separated itself.

**Savage deities.** These deities are here called savage, because their worshippers ascribed to them a savage or cruel character and honoured them with cruel rites and sacrifices.

**Revere.** Worship, adore.

**7. Hung.** What is the Past tense or tenses of "hang," when the verb is Transitive? See *Mid. Gram.* p. 208.

**Revelled.** Took a riotous or wild delight.

**Gambols.** Frolics, pranks, games.

**Desolating.** Destructive, producing a state of ruin or desolation.

**Reservoir.** A place where anything is kept in reserve or store; chiefly used for a place where water is stored up for supplying a fountain or a canal. Here the thing stored up is not water, but flame.

**Burst.** Show how this Transitive verb has become Intransitive. See *Mid. Gram.* § 180 (b).

**Tokens.** Indications, signs, marks, proofs.

**Provoke.** Arouse, excite.

**After the young king.** Is "after" here a preposition, a conjunction, or an adverb?

**Liholiho.** By what rule is this word in the same case with "king"? *Mid. Gram.* § 384 (3).

**Made up their minds.** Decided.

**Abandon.** Give up, renounce once for all.

**Would descend, should forsake.**

Why are these verbs in the Past tense? *Mid. Gram.* § 422, Rule 1.

**Forsake.** Leave, give up, desert, abandon.

**Professors of, etc.** Men who professed (or made an open avowal of having accepted) the new faith.

**Rise.** Give the Causal or Transitive form of this verb, and mention other examples. *Mid. Gram.* § 186.

**8. Embraced.** Accepted and made her own.

**Defy.** Challenge.

**Fastness.** Fortress, fortified place, stronghold.

**Spell.** A magical charm of any kind. Here the spell referred to is the belief in Pélé's power, which the people could not shake off.

**9. Faith.** Confidence in the goodness of her cause and in the truth of her convictions.

**Outraging.** Violently opposing.

**Must ensue.** Would certainly follow.

**Transgressed.** Violated.

A. In attempting such a task she was outraging the old notion—*Principal clause.*

B. That fearful consequences must ensue—*Noun-clause to A.*

C. If she transgressed the rule—*Adverb clause to B.*

D. By which women were prohibited, etc.—*Adjective clause to C.*

**Approaching.** Is this word a Verbal noun or a Verbal adjective?

**Toilsome.** Laborious.

**Wild crags.** Rough or rugged rocks.

**Slippery sheets.** Smooth layers of beds. The words are in contrast with "wild crags."

**Slopes.** Sloping banks.

**Coast-bred.** Bred or brought up on the level ground of the sea-coast.

**Groaning.** The rumblings underground that sounded like the groanings of a sick man.

**Oozed up.** Percolated.

**Crevices.** Cracks, openings.

**Must have filled.** Necessarily or certainly filled.

**But hers.** What part of speech is "but" here? *Mid. Gram.* p. 142.

**To believe.** This is the Simple or Noun-Infinitive, and is the object to the Passive verb "had been taught." *Mid. Gram.* § 193. "Believe" is a Transitive verb. Point out its object.

**Vindictive.** Revengeful.

**Precincts.** Private domains or boundaries.

**Trespassing.** This is the verb used to express the act of going into some prohibited place, or stepping over forbidden bounds.

**Were suffocated.** Were stifled or choked. Why is this verb in the Plural number, although the noun is Singular? *Mid. Gram.* § 396.

**Noxious.** Injurious, harmful.

**Gases.** Any kind of substance of which air is made is called a gas.

**It must have seemed.** It necessarily or certainly seemed.

**10. All sufficient.** Quite sufficient, or more than sufficient. Parse "all." *Mid. Gram.* p. 141.

**To guard her.** Which Infinitive is this?

**Confronted her.** Met her, lay before her.

**On.** Forwards.

**Sanctuary.** Sacred place, temple or shrine.

**Bar her way.** Obstruct her progress.



- Professors. Profess, profession, professedly.
8. **Strong.** Strongly, strength, strengthen.
- Resolved.** Resolute, resolutely, resolution.
- Defy.** Defiant, defiance.
- Trembling.** Tremble, tremor, tremulous, tremendous, tremblingly.
9. **Ordinary.** Order, ordain, ordinary.
- Rule.** Regular, regularly.
- Woman.** Woman, womanly, feminine (Latin form).
- Painful.** Pain, painful, painfully, punish.
- Especially.** Special, specify, specific.
- Infancy.** Infant, infantile.
- Fury.** Furious, furiously, infuriate.
- Vindictive.** Vengeance, revenge, revengeful.
10. **Perils.** Perilous, perilously, imperil.
- Sanctuary.** Saint, sanctify, sanctuary.
- Bar.** Barrier, barring (*preposition*).
- Seized.** Seizure.
11. **Exclaimed.** Exclamation, exclamatory.
- Laws.** Lawyer, loyal, legal (Latin form).
12. **Uttering.** Utter, utterance.
- Anxious.** Anxiety.
- Confusion.** Confound, confused, confusedly.
- Noble.** Nobly, nobility, noble.
- Reverence.** Reverent, reverential, revere.

## 7.—Generosity: The Lion and the Spaniel.

1. **Thronged.** Crowded with visitors.

**Treble.** What kind of Numeral is this? *Mid. Gram.* § 96. What other form has it?

**Unprecedented.** Without any precedent or parallel.

**Show.** Exhibition, the thing shown or exhibited.

**A fortune.** This word is used in the sense of the money or wealth in which fortune or good luck consists. "A little fortune,"—that is, a sum of money, which to a keeper of a lion-show was a fortune or a considerable sum of money.

2. **Pre-eminence.** Distinction.

**King's lion.** In what case is "lion"? *Mid. Gram.* § 384 (2). Is "lion" a Subjective or an Objective complement?

**Straitened.** Narrow. The "straitened dominions" here meant are the cage in which the lion was kept.

**Traversed.** Walked up and down.

**Spaniel.** A long-haired kind of dog.

**Would pretend.** Was in the habit of pretending. *Mid. Gram.* p. 215 (c).

**Fond complaisance.** A fond or affectionate desire to do whatever the spaniel wished. "Complaisance" is also spelt as "complacence."

**Would hold down.** See note on "would pretend."

**Formidable.** Fit to be feared, both for their size and strength.

**Chops.** The upper and lower jaws; sometimes spelt as "chaps."

3. **Oblation.** Offering, gift, present.

**A fellow.** Some common, ill-bred man.

**Crouched.** Bent its body low towards the ground.

**Supplicatory attitudes.** The posture of entreaty.

**Devouring.** Is this a Verbal noun or a Verbal adjective.

**Philosophic.** Thoughtful.

**Courting.** Inviting.

**4. Mess.** A dish of food.

**Aloof.** To one side; apart. On this form of adverb see *Mid. Gram.* § 267 (2).

**Kept.** This is properly a Transitive verb. But here it is Intransitive. How has it become so? *Mid. Gram.* § 180 (b).

**Keeping.** Is the verb here Transitive or Intransitive?

**As it were.** Apparently.

**To be its taster.** To have the first taste. Show that the noun "taster" is in the Objective case. *Mid. Gram.* § 386 (2).

**Fears.** In what case is this noun? *Mid. Gram.* § 384 (5).

**Abated.** Lessened, diminished.

**Quickened.** Sharpened, stimulated.

**Victuals.** Food. Is this noun ever used in the Singular? *Mid. Gram.* § 86 (f).

**Trembling.** Shaking, shivering. Is "trembling" here a Verbal noun or a Verbal adjective?

**Ventured to eat.** Had the courage to eat.

**Partake.** Take a share.

**5. Inasmuch that.** To such an extent that.

**Would lay.** Was in the habit of laying. *Mid. Gram.* p. 215 (c).

**To sleep.** Which Infinitive is this? See *Mid. Gram.* § 236 (a).

**Advertised.** Promised by a general notice.

**Adventure.** Curious or strange event.

**Reclaim.** Demand or claim back.

**To part.** To separate.

**To acquiesce.** To submit or agree. Which Infinitive is this? *Mid. Gram.* § 235 (b).

**Have.** In what mood is "have"? *Mid. Gram.* § 233 (d).

**You see, sir—hundred guineas.** Change the whole of this sentence from the Direct to the Indirect narration. *Mid. Gram.* § 434, etc.

**6. Spectators.** Persons who had come to see the show; beholders; lookers-on.

**Had a curiosity.** Had an inquisitive desire.

**Monopoly.** Exclusive possession.

**Audaciously.** Impudently.

**Flew.** What is the Present tense of this verb? *Mid. Gram.* p. 207.

**Seemed terrified.** Appeared on pretended to be terrified.

**Morsel.** A small piece of food less than a mouthful.

**Tacitly.** Silently.

**7. Gorged.** Satiated with food.

**Lay down.** What is the Present tense of this verb. *Mid. Gram.* p. 207. What is the Causal or Transitive form of it? Give other examples. *Mid. Gram.* § 186.

**Posture.** Attitude.

**Sportive.** Playful.

**Would scrape and tear.** In what sense is "would" here used? In the sense of habit. *Mid. Gram.* p. 215 (c).

**Affected.** Influenced.

**Sentiment.** Feeling.

**Tragic catastrophe.** Sad ending

**Extraordinary.** Uncommon strange.

**By tradition.** Orally; not by writing, but by verbal transmission.

**8. Desolate.** Solitary, friendless. What noun is qualified by this adjective?

**Conceive otherwise.** Suppose that anything else had happened.

**Asleep.** On the Predicative use of adverbs see *Mid. Gram.* § 270.

**Uneasy.** Restless.

**Drooping.** Sorrowful, languishing drooping as a flower droops or hangs its head down from want of water.

**On high.** On this form of adverb see *Mid. Gram.* § 267 (3).

**Horrible.** Terrible, formidable.

**9. Carcass.** Dead body.

**Tempt.** Attract.

**Loathing.** Disgust, keen dislike.

## NOTES

**His passion.** In what case is this noun? *Mid. Gram.* § 384 (5).

**Fangs.** Sharp-pointed teeth are called "fangs."

**Splinters.** Strips of wood torn off a larger piece.

**Grapple at.** Seize hold of.

**Being restrained.** Is this a Verbal noun or a Verbal adjective?

**As if quite spent.** What verb is understood between "if" and "quite"? *Mid. Gram.* § 291 (c).

**Remains.** Dead body, carcass.

**Associate.** Companion, friend.

**Suppressed roars.** Roars uttered in a subdued or softened tone, in token of grief.

**Melancholy.** Sorrow, grief.

**All around.** All things and all persons around.

**For the loss.** On account of the loss.

**The only friend.** In what case is "friend" and why? *Mid. Gram.* § 386 (3).

**10. Declined.** Decayed, grew weak.

**Sustenance.** Food, nourishment, support.

**One morning.** In what case is this word? See *Mid. Gram.* § 386 (5).

**Interred.** Buried.

**Grave, watered.** What verb is understood between "grave" and "watered"?

**11. Reminds me.** What verb is the subject to this verb? *Mid. Gram.* § 22 (f) and § 316 (a).

**Provoked.** Aroused to anger.

**Petulant.** Pert, saucy.

**Insolence.** Audacity, impudence.

**Resentment.** Anger, displeasure.

**Sensible.** Conscious, aware.

**Testy.** Quick-tempered.

**Clemency.** Forbearance, kindness, mercy.

**With all his faults.** In spite of all his faults.

### WORDS.

1. Obligated. Oblige, obligation, obliging, obligingly.

**Prices.** Price, precious, preciousness.

**Novelty.** Novel, novelty, novelty, re-new, novice.

**Space.** Spacious, spaciousness, ex-patiate.

**Acquired.** Acquire, acquisition, ment, acquisitive, acquisition.

2. Front. Frontal, con-front, front.

**Occupied.** Occupy, occupation, occupation.

**Beast.** Bestial, bestiality, bestly.

**Kings.** King, kingly. Latin form—regal, royal.

**Dominions.** Domain, dominion.

**Attended.** Attend, attention, attentive, attentively.

**Pretend.** Pretence, pretension, pretentious.

**Complaisance.** Please, pleasant, pleasantness, complaisance, complaisance.

**Head.** Capital (Latin form adjective).

**Creature.** Create, creature, creature, creator, creative.

3. Customary. Custom, custom, custom, ac-custom.

**Dog.** Canine (Latin form adjective).

**Cat.** Feline (Latin form adjective).

**Oblation.** Offer, offering, oblation.

**Money.** Pecuniary (Latin form of adjective).

**Supplicatory.** Supplicate, supplicant, supplication.

**Desirous.** Desire (verb) desirable (noun), desirable.

**Courting.** Court (verb or noun), courtier, courtship, courtesan, courteously.

4. Table. Tabular, tabulate.

**Quickened.** Quick, quickness, quicken.

**Slowly.** Slow, slowness, slowness, sluggard.

5. **Friendship.** Friend, friendly, friendship, be-friend.  
**Confidence.** Confide, confident, confidently, confident.  
**Boldness.** Bold, boldly, boldness, em-bolden.  
**Length.** Long, lengthen.  
**Pity.** Pity (*verb* or *noun*), pitiful, piteous.  
**Property.** Proper, properly, property, appropriate.  
**Finally.** Fine, finish, final, finally.
6. **Spectators.** Spectacle.  
**Brute.** Brutal, brutally, brutalise.  
**Monopoly.** Monopolise, monopolist.  
**Offended.** Offend, offence, offensive, offensively.  
**Fury.** Furious, furiously, infuriate.
7. **Posture.** Pose, position, positive, posture.  
**Ear.** Auricular (*Latin form of adjective*).  
**Appeared.** Appear, apparently, appearance, apparition.  
**Affected.** Affect, affectation, affection, affectionate.  
**Sentiment.** Sense, sensible, sensation, as-sent.  
**Proceed.** Process, procedure.  
**Known.** Know, knowledge, knowing, knowingly.  
**Father.** Fatherly (*Latin form, paternal*).  
**Son.** Filial (*Latin form of adjective*).
8. **Sickened.** Sick, sickly, sickness, sicken.  
**Desolate.** Desolate (*adjective*), desolation.  
**Nose.** Nasal.  
**High.** Highly, height, heighten.
9. **Attempted.** Tempt, temptation, temptingly, at-tempt.  
**Variety.** Vary, various, variously, variety.  
**Instantly.** Instant, instantaneous.

- Restrained.** Restrain, restraint.  
**Spent.** Spend, ex-pend, expenditure, expensive.  
**Associate.** Social, society, associate (*verb*).
10. **Languished.** Languor, languid, languidly, languish.  
**Gradually.** Grade (*verb*), grade (*noun*), gradual, gradually, graduate.  
**Sustenance.** Sustain.  
**Interred.** Inter, interment.
11. **Provoked.** Provoke, provocation, provokingly.  
**Benefactor.** Benefit (*noun*), benefit (*verb*), beneficent, benefactor.  
**Exciting.** Excite, excitement, excitedly.  
**Depended.** Depend, dependence, dependant, dependent, in-dependently.

## 8.—The Dog and the Water Lily: No Fable.

**No fable.** This means that the story about to be told is a fact, and not a fable or fiction.

The poet took a walk in the middle of the day, along the bank of the Ouse river. The lilies were then in full flower, and there was one lily in particular which he wished to get. He tried to draw it towards him with his walking-stick; but failed. His spaniel (which had left the house with him, and had been playing by his side) stood and watched what he was doing, as if trying to make out what he wanted. But he called it away from the spot, and continued his walk. On his return the dog ran on ahead and jumped into the water, plucked the lily, and laid it at its master's feet. The poet was delighted with the dog's attentions, which showed how a dumb animal may surpass even a man in affection,

and taught its own master (the poet) a lesson of gratitude to God, the giver of all.

**1. Shady.** Cloudy, and hence shady. **Airs.** Breezes.

**Ouse's.** Pronounced Oose. A river in Buckinghamshire, on one bank of which stood the village where the poet was then living.

**Literary cares.** The toils of authorship.

**Silent tide.** Noiseless current. The current of the Ouse is slow, and therefore silent or noiseless. There is no splashing of the water against the banks.

**'Scaped.** Escaped. This is an instance of an Intransitive verb being used as the Past Participle, as in the phrase "a failed candidate." See *Mid. Gram.* § 242 (b).

**Wandered.** Took a stroll or walk.

**His side.** The river Ouse is here personified, that is, spoken of as a person. Hence "his" is used, and not "its." *Mid. Gram.* § 56.

**2. Pedigree.** Descent. "High in pedigree" means "well-bred."

**Two nymphs.** It here means the two young ladies, with whose father Cowper the poet was on intimate terms of friendship.

**Every grace.** Every kind of bodily and mental beauty.

**3. Wantoned.** Played about. What is the subject to this verb?

**Flags and reeds.** The tall grasses growing out of the water close to the bank. A spaniel is a kind of dog that loves the water by instinct; and Cowper's spaniel was playing in the water among the flags and reeds. A tall grass is called a flag, because it waves like a flag in the air.

**Lost.** Disappearing, lost to view.

**Now—now.** At one time, at another time.

**Starting into sight.** Suddenly re-appearing again and coming up out of the water.

**Swallow.** A bird that visits England only in the spring and summer.

**Meads.** Meadows, grass-covered fields.

**4. Time.** Season, viz. spring or summer.

**Newly-blown.** Lately expanded into flower.

**Intent surveyed.** Intently surveyed. Explain how an adjective is here used in the place of an adverb. *Mid. Gram.* § 389.

**And one I wished.** And there was one lily that I wished to be my own; that is, that I wished to get.

**5. Cane.** Walking-stick.

**Extended far.** Stretched out far into the river.

**I sought.** I endeavoured.

**Steer it.** Guide it with the cane, as a steersman guides a boat with the rudder.

**Close to land.** So as to draw it close to land.

**The prize.** The lily which he prized or valued so much.

**Though nearly caught.** What verb is understood after "though"? *Mid. Gram.* § 322.

**6. Beau.** The spaniel was called Beau. Sounded as "Bo."

**Marked.** Observed, watched.

**My unsuccessful pains.** My vain attempts to draw the lily within reach.

**Fixed.** Attentive.

**Considerate.** Thoughtful.

**Puzzling.** Feeling puzzled or perplexed.

**Set.** Applied.

**To comprehend.** Which Infinitive is this? See *Mid. Gram.* § 236. "Comprehend" means "understand," "make out the meaning of."

**7. Chirup.** Whistle.

**With a chirup.** In what sense is "with" here used? See *Mid. Gram.* § 275 (b).

**Dispersing.** Scattering, driving away.

**His dream.** The vague ideas of helping me that seemed to be passing through his mind like a dream.

**The windings.** The turns and bends.

**8. My ramble ended.** My ramble being ended. Explain this construction. *Mid. Gram.* § 384 (5). A ramble is a stroll or walk in the open air without any particular object.

**I returned.** I went back by the same way that I came.

**The floating wreath.** The cluster of lilies that rested on the water as if they were floating.

**Again discerned.** Recognised.

**Plunging.** Leaping into the water.

**Shore.** The bank of the river. "Shore," however, is more commonly said of the sea than a river.

**9. That lily.** That particular lily which Cowper had been trying to get.

**Cropped.** Bitten off from the stem; plucked.

**Impatient.** Impatiently. Explain the substitution of an adjective for an adverb. *Mid. Gram.* § 389.

**Swim.** In what mood is this verb? *Mid. Gram.* § 233 (a).

**To meet.** Which kind of Infinitive is this, and what noun is the object to it?

**My quick approach.** Me quickly approaching; me as I quickly approached.

**The treasure.** The prize, viz. the cropped lily.

**10. Charmed.** Delighted. What noun or pronoun is qualified by this participle?

**Mortify.** Humble; literally, deaden.

**Shall hear.** Why is "shall" here used instead of "will"? Because the poet here lays a command upon himself to write a poem in praise of his faithful and devoted spaniel. *Mid. Gram.* § 207 (b).

**11. Enjoin.** Order.

**Prompt.** Quick, ready to act.

**All.** Parse "all." *Mid. Gram.* p. 141.

### WORDS.

**1. Literary.** Letters, literary, literature.

**3. Pursued.** Pursue, pursuit.

**Flight.** Flee (*verb*), fly (*verb*).

**4. Intent.** Intend, intense, intent, intently, intention.

**5. Extended.** Extend, extent, extension, extensive, extensively.

**Hand.** Handle, handy; manual (Latin form).

**6. Pains.** Pain (*noun*), pain (*verb*), painful, painfully, penal, punish.

**Fixed.** Fix, fixture, fixed, fixedly.

**Considerate.** Consider, consideration, considerate, considerately.

**Comprehend.** Comprehension, comprehensive, comprehensively.

**8. Discerned.** Discern, discreet, discreetly, discretion.

**11. Enjoin.** Injunction.

### 9.—The Wrestler and his Pupil.

**1. Sleights.** Tricks. This word is sounded like the *ei* in "height," and not like the *ei* in "eight."

**Taught.** Point out the object or objects to this verb. *Mid. Gram.* § 177. Convert this sentence in both forms from Active to Passive.

**Withheld.** Kept to himself, held back.

**2. Withstand him.** Stand against him.

**Only out of respect.** What word or words are here qualified by "only"? *Mid. Gram.* § 253 (a).

**To his master.** Why is "to" here used instead of "than," after a Comparative adjective? *Mid. Gram.* § 137.

On a par. On an equality.

3. **To wrestle.** On the use of an Infinitive verb its complement see *Mid. Gram.* § 178.

**Arena.** A piece of ground selected for athletic sports.

4. **Had his adversary.** What conjunction is understood before this clause? And why is "had" placed before its subject? *Mid. Gram.* § 230 (3).

**Adversary.** The man opposed to him.

**Fastened on him.** Seized hold of him. How has the verb "fastened" become Intransitive? *Mid. Gram.* § 180 (b).

5. **Foil.** Defeat, frustrate.

**Dashed him.** Threw him violently down.

7. **Sages.** Wise men.

**Give.** What is the object or objects after "give." *Mid. Gram.* § 177.

Turn this paragraph from the Direct to the Indirect narration. *Mid. Gram.* § 434, etc.

#### WORDS.

1. **Certain.** Certainly, certainty, ascertain.

**Young.** Youth, youthful, youthfully.

2. **Strength.** Stroug, strongly, strengthen.

**Respect.** Respect (*noun*), respect (*verb*), respective, respectively, respectable, respectably.

**Instructor.** Instruct, instructive, instructively.

3. **Nobles.** Noble, nobly, nobleness, nobility, en-noble.

4. **Adversary.** Advert, adverse, adversely, adversity, adversary.

6. **Reproaches.** Reproach (*noun*), reproach (*verb*), reproachful.

**Presumed.** Presuné, presumption, presumptuous.

**Victory.** Victor, victory, victorious con-vict.

**Resist.** Resistance, resistible.

#### 10.—The Rat with a Bell.

1. **Infested.** Overrun.

**Scaled.** Climbed up.

**Flitches.** The side of a hog, when it has been salted and prepared for the table, is called a flitch.

**Bacon.** What kind of noun is this? *Mid. Gram.* § 40.

**These.** Is "these" a Demonstrative pronoun here or a Demonstrative adjective? *Mid. Gram.* § 149 and § 152.

**Pastry.** Food made with wheaten flour.

**Mining.** Boring holes. Is this a Gerund or a Participle?

**Storeroom.** The room used for storing up provisions.

**Of jams.** Fruit boiled with sugar is called "jam."

**Undermined, etc.** Bored holes under floors.

**Ran races.** What kind of object is "races"? *Mid. Gram.* § 183 (b).

**Cupboards.** Shelves built in a recess in the wall.

**Wainscots.** A wainscot is a line of narrow planks of wood fixed round the four sides of a room and touching the floor.

2. **Get at them.** Catch them, get hold of them. In what mood is "get"? *Mid. Gram.* § 233 (b).

**Too cunning to eat.** "To eat" is here a Gerundial infinitive in the sense of *purpose*. The purpose for which the poisoned food was laid was that the rats might eat it. But the rats were too cunning, that is, more cunning than the master of the house wished them to be.

**A few.** Show the difference between "few" and "a few." *Mid. Gram.* § 99.

**Heedless.** Careless, incautious.

**Stragglers.** Rats who had straggled or wandered away from the general multitude.

**Alive.** On this form of adverb

see *Mid. Gram.* § 267 (4). Explain the position and use of the adverb in this sentence. *Mid. Gram.* § 270 (b). Would it be correct to say "an alive rat"?

**Trying.** Is this a Verbal noun or a Verbal adjective?

**To fasten.** Which kind of Infinitive is this?

**3. Overjoyed.** More than usually joyed, much delighted.

**Scoured.** Scampered, ran off in confusion and terror.

**One way.** In what case is "way"? *Mid. Gram.* § 386 (5).

**4. It was all hurry-scurry.** There was nothing but hurry-scurry, --that is, rapid and confused flight. "Scurry" is the noun formed from the verb "scour."

**The better cheer.** The more I shall have to eat. "Cheer" here means "food," "victuals."

**The fewer, the better.** Explain the first "the" and the second "the" in these phrases. *Mid. Gram.* § 261.

**Quoth he.** Said he. "Quoth" is always placed before its subject. Every other form of this verb is obsolete. *Mid. Gram.* p. 219, par. 11.

**Revelled.** Feasted.

**Stuffed.** Stuffed himself. On the omission of the Reflexive pronoun see *Mid. Gram.* § 180 (b).

**5. Play the bugbear.** Played or acted the part of a bugbear. A thing or person used to frighten men away is called a bugbear. He played the play or part of a bugbear. What kind of object is "the bugbear"? *Mid. Gram.* § 183 (c).

**To perfection.** Perfectly.

**Longed.** Eagerly desired.

**To mix.** To associate. Here the verb is used Intransitively, as explained in *Mid. Gram.* § 180 (b).

**To get rid.** To get himself rid or clear. The Reflexive pronoun is

omitted, as in *Mid. Gram.* § 180 (b).

**Of his bell.** "Of" is here used in the sense of separation. *Mid. Gram.* § 282 (d).

**All in vain.** Entirely or altogether in vain. What part of speech is "all" in this place? *Mid. Gram.* p. 141.

**Fore feet.** Here "fore" is an adjective, not an adverb.

**Disconsolate.** Utterly miserable.

**Puss.** A pet cat is called "puss" or "pussy."

**6. Much above.** "Much" is here an adverb qualifying the preposition "above." *Mid. Gram.* § 253 (a).

**For it.** On account of it.

**Equally, etc.** They shun him as much as he shuns them.

## WORDS.

**2. Alive.** Life, live (*verb*), live (*adj.*), alive (*adverb*), lively (*adj.*) (Latin form of *adj.* vital).

**Trying.** Try, trial.

**Prisoner.** Prison, prisoner, imprisonment, im-prisonment.

**3. Recovering.** Recover, recovery, recoverable.

**Companions.** Company, accompany (*verb*), companion, companionable.

**Suspecting.** Suspect, suspicion, suspicious, suspiciously.

**Enemy.** Inimical (Latin form of *adj.*)

**4. Pursued.** Pursuit.

**Flight.** Flee.

**Amused.** Muse, music, musical, musically, musician, a-muse.

**5. Pleasantly.** Please, pleasure, pleasant, pleasantly.

**6. Terror.** Terrify, terrific, terrible, terribly.

**Solitary.** Sole, solitude, solely, solitary, de-solate.

**Equally.** Equal, equally, equality, equalise.



## 1.—Filial Love.

§ 1. ALEXANDER THE GREAT AND HIS MOTHER.

1. The Great. See *Mid. Gram.* § 34, *Note 2*, and § 406.

**Mother.** In what case is "mother" and why? *Mid. Gram.* § 384 (3).

**Woman.** In what case is "woman" and why? *Mid. Gram.* § 384 (2).

**Ambitious.** Aspiring, aiming at high place and power, desirous of fame or distinction.

**When pursuing.** What verb is understood after "when"? *Mid. Gram.* § 322.

**State affairs.** Public affairs. Parse "state." *Mid. Gram.* § 388.

**Meddle with.** Interfere in.

2. Sharp reply. Angry reply.

**Submissively.** Without making any sign of impatience or remonstrance.

**Epistles.** Letters.

## WORDS.

1. **Mother.** Motherly; maternal (Latin form).

**Woman.** Womanly; feminine (Latin form).

**Occasioned.** Occasion (*verb*), occasion (*noun*), occasional, occasionally.

**Conquests.** Conquer, conqueror, conquest.

**Kingdom.** King, kingship, kingdom, kingly; regal or royal (Latin form).

**Peaceably.** Peace, peaceable, peaceably, pacify, ap-peace.

2. **Submissively.** Submit, submission, submissive, submissively.

**Use.** Use (*verb*), use (*noun*), useful, usefully, utilise, utility; usual, usually.

**Letters.** Literate, literary.

**Complaining.** Complain, complaint.

**Grievous.** Grief, grievous, grievously, ag-grieve.

**Know.** Knowledge, knowing, knowingly.

## § 2. NAPOLEON AND THE YOUNG ENGLISH SAILOR.

This little poem relates a story of filial love,—the love that a young English seaman, who had been detained as a prisoner on the French coast, had for his mother.

The poet tells the tale as a little anecdote in Napoleon's life which showed that though he had no regard for human life or human suffering in his career of ambition and conquest, he possessed a rough good-nature which broke out at times. Stanza 1.

When a French fleet was being fitted out at Boulogne on the French coast for the invasion of England, a young English tar or seaman (who had been taken prisoner on some previous occasion) was detained there. His longing for home was so great, that on seeing a hoghead or empty barrel floating towards the shore he took possession of it, and secretly fashioned it as well as he could into a boat, in which he hoped to cross the Channel, in order to get back to his country. Napoleon got news of it, and having summoned the young man into his presence, inquired why he was so rash as to attempt to cross the Channel in such a wretched boat, and twitted him with being madly in love with some English maiden. On learning from the youth that his object was, not to see a sweetheart, but to see his mother, from whom he had been separated for many years, he gave him a piece of gold and sent him safely across the Channel in one of his own ships under a flag of truce.

1. **Contemplating.** Meditating on, thinking of. Is this a Gerund or a Participle?

**Apart.** On this form of adverb see *Mid. Gram.* § 267 (2).

**Homicidal.** (Hom-i-ei'-dal)—destructive of human life. "Homieidal glory" means "the glory or fame of his man-destroying victories."

**Traits.** Marks or aspects of character. The last *t* in this word is not sounded.

**Soften to our heart.** Reconcile to our feelings.

**Napoleon's story.** The story of Napoleon's life.

**2. Banners.** Flags.

**At Boulogne.** (Sounded Boolōn.) Boulogne is a French port in the English Channel. Napoleon collected a fleet at Boulogne for the purpose of invading England.

**Armed.** Aroused to arms.

**Every freeman.** The threat of an invasion by the French from Boulogne roused almost every man in our island to arms. No less than 300,000 men came forward as volunteers, that is, voluntary or unpaid soldiers. The voluntary character of their service is implied in the word "freeman"; it was not compulsory service.

**His navy.** Some men belonging to his fleet or navy. What kind of noun is "navy"? See *Mid. Gram.* § 37.

**3. Suffered.** Allowed.

**Unprisoned.** Unbound, without restraint.

**Aye.** Constantly.

**England's home.** His home in England.

**4. Methinks.** This kind of verb is called Impersonal. Methinks, it thinks me=I think. *Mid. Gram.* p. 220, par. 16.

**Halfway over.** Halfway over or across the English Channel. In what case is "way"? See *Mid. Gram.* § 386 (5).

**With envy.** The seaman looked at the birds with envy, because they could reach the cliffs of Dover (on the

opposite coast of England), which he could not.

**Dear.** Beloved, because they were in his own country.

**White cliffs.** The cliffs or rocks of Dover are made of chalk, and hence are said to be white.

**5. Stormy midnight watch.** A watch at midnight during a storm. During the night some seamen are always placed on watch.

**Sojourn.** Living in a strange place or in a strange country.

**Dearer.** Preferable. A midnight watch at sea in a storm would have been preferable, he thought, to living in this strange country, if only the storm brought the vessel nearer to his home.

**6. Care.** Sorrow.

**Dreaming.** Dreaming about home while he was half awake and half asleep. This participle qualifies the pronoun "he."

**Doting.** Thinking fondly of those from whom he was separated.

**One morning.** In what case is this noun? See *Mid. Gram.* § 386 (5).

**Hogshead.** A large cask or barrel made of wood.

**Come.** In what mood is this verb? *Mid. Gram.* § 233 (a).

**Shoreward floating.** Floating towards the shore.

**The deep.** The sea.

**7. Wrought.** Worked at the hogshead so as to fit it out as a boat.

**The livelong day.** All day long. For the case of "day" see *Mid. Gram.* § 386 (5).

**Laborious.** Industrious. This adjective qualifies the pronoun "he."

**Lurking.** Hiding; that is, working stealthily, so as to avoid being seen by the French.

**Launched.** Put into the water.

**By mighty working.** By making strenuous efforts.

**8. Wherry.** A shallow light boat

in which only one or two persons can sit.

**9. Ploughing.** A ship or boat is said to plough or turn up the waves in the same way as an actual plough cuts and turns up the sod.

**The boldest.** The boldest men. *Mid. Gram.* § 128 (1).

**Shudder.** Shudder with fear. In what mood is this verb? *Mid. Gram.* § 232 (a).

**Untarred.** Not painted with tar. Tar is a thick black fluid extracted from coal, and boats are painted with it so that any cracks or holes through which the water could come may be filled up.

**Uncompassed.** Not fitted or supplied with a mariner's compass. The compass shows in what direction the ship is going.

**Unkeeled.** Not fitted with a keel; flat-bottomed.

**No sail.** This phrase is grammatically incomplete:—"there being no sail," Nominative absolute. Without a sail.

**Rudder.** The instrument at the end of a boat by which a boat is steered.

**10. Interlaced.** Intertwined; tied or fastened the different planks together.

**Sorry skiff.** Wretched boat.

**Wattled willows.** Plaited osiers.

**Thus equipped.** Furnished with such a boat.

**11. Beach.** Sea-shore.

**Argo.** This was the name of a ship celebrated in Greek mythology. It is here used as a Common noun. *Mid. Gram.* § 36 (b).

**Sorely jeering.** Making cruel fun of the wretched boat made by the English seaman.

**Tidings of him.** News about him.

**12. Serene.** Unmoved. Undisturbed.

**In his wonted attitude.** In his usual style or manner.

**13. Would'st pass.** Would'st attempt to cross.

**Staves.** Sticks or poles. On the double plural of "staff" see *Mid. Gram.* § 81.

**So rudely fashioned.** So roughly put together.

**Impassioned.** Passionately in love with.

**14. Sweetheart.** This noun is of the Common gender, and can stand either for the youth beloved by a maiden or for the maiden beloved by a youth. Here of course it means the latter.

**Absent long from one another.** This is grammatically incomplete, and should be written in full as follows:—"We (my mother and I) having been long absent from one another": Nominative absolute. Here the participle shows the reason or cause why he longed to see his mother. See *Mid. Gram.* § 244 (b).

**From one another.** It would have been more correct to have said "from each other." See *Mid. Gram.* § 111.

**16. The tar.** The English seaman. "Tar" or "jack tar" is a colloquial term for a seaman.

**He should, etc.** What conjunction is understood before "he"? *Mid. Gram.* § 317. Why is "should" here used rather than "shall"? See *Mid. Gram.* § 422, rule 1.

**17. Scantly shift.** Contrive with difficulty.

**Hearty.** Sufficient to satisfy a hearty appetite.

Turn stanzas 13, 14, and 15 from the Direct to the Indirect narration.

#### WORDS.

**1. Love.** Love (*verb* or *noun*), loving, lovingly, lovable, lovely.

**Traits.** Draw, tract, tractable.

**Soften.** Soft, softly, softness, soften.

- Heart.** Hearty (Latin form, cordial), heartily, dis-hearten.
2. **Island.** Insular, isolate.
- Navv.** Navigate, navigator.
- Poor.** Poorly, poverty; pauper (Latin form), pauperise.
4. **Envy.** Envy (*noun and verb*), invidious, enviously, invidiously.
5. **Watch.** Wake, wakeful, watchful, watchfully.
6. **Banished.** Banish, banishment.
10. **Equipped.** Equip, equipment.
12. **Stranger.** Strange, strangely, estrange.
15. **Favour.** Favour (*noun and verb*), favourite, favourable, favourably.
- Brave.** Brave (*verb and adjective*), bravely, bravery.
16. **Gold.** Golden, gild, gilt.

## 12.—Discovery of Vaccination.

1. **Encountered.** Met.
- Promulgating.** Making known to the world. Is this a Verbal noun or a Verbal adjective?
- Establishing.** Confirming, proving to the world.
- Preventive.** That which prevents something from happening.
- Cow-pox.** A pustular eruption (or breaking out of spots) on the udder of a cow. These, when they break out, impart the disease to any one who touches them, and produce a malady similar in kind, but much less acute and dangerous, than small-pox. It was found that milkmaids who had had the cow-pox were secured thereby against small-pox. This led Jenner to discover a method by which the pustulent matter of the cow-pox could be introduced into the bodies of men. This method is called vaccination, from the Latin word *vacca*, which means a cow; and

the matter introduced into men's bodies is called vaccine.

**Whoever.** What is implied by the termination "ever"? *Mid. Gram.* § 159 (c).

**Many before him—small-pox.**

A. Many before him had witnessed the cow-pox—*Prin. clause.*

B. And had heard the report current among the milkmaids—*Co-ord. to A.*

C. That every one was secure against small-pox — *Noun-clause to B.*

D. Who had taken that disease — *Adjective clause to C.*

**Witnessed.** Seen, observed.

**Trifling.** Trivial.

**Significance.** Importance.

**Worthy of investigation.** Worth examining.

2. **Student.** In what case is this noun? *Mid. Gram.* § 386 (6).

**Arrested.** Held fast; caught and retained.

**Country girl.** A girl who lived in some village, and not in London or any other great city. Parse "country." *Mid. Gram.* § 388.

**Chemist.** One who mixes and sells drugs.

**When the girl.** Is this clause Co-ordinate with, or is it Subordinate to, the previous one? Here it is Co-ordinate, because "when" is used in a Continuative sense. *Mid. Gram.* § 308.

The entire sentence is analysed as follows:—

A. The small-pox was mentioned — *Principal clause.*

B. When the girl said — *Co-ord. to A.*

C. "I can't take that disease" (see *Mid. Gram.* § 318)— *Noun-clause to B.*

D. "For I have had the cow-pox" — *Co-ord. to C.*

**I can't take.** Change this sentence from the Direct to the Indirect narration.

**The observation.** The remark, the thing said.

**Riveted.** Seized and held fast.

**Set about.** Set himself about; began. On the Intransitive use of "set" see *Mid. Gram.* § 180 (b). The word "about" is here a preposition.

**Inquiring.** Is this a Gerund or a Participle?

**Making observations.** Taking careful note of observed facts.

**Professional friends.** Men of the same profession or calling.

**Views.** Opinions.

**As to.** See *Mid. Gram.* p. 141, 142. "As to" may be parsed as a prepositional phrase. It is probably an abridged form of the phrase "so far as it relates to."

**Virtues.** Powers.

**Laughed at him.** This is a Prepositional verb. *Mid. Gram.* § 187.

**To expel.** Which Infinitive is this? *Mid. Gram.* § 235 (b).

**Society.** Professional brotherhood.

**Persisted.** Why is this verb in the Past tense? *Mid. Gram.* § 422, rule 1. "To persist" means to continue doing a thing against the wishes or convenience of others.

**Harassing.** Annoying, troubling, worrying.

**3. To the country.** "Country" is the opposite to "city." See note on "country girl" in par. 2.

**To practise.** Which Infinitive is this?

**Make experiments.** Put his discovery to the test.

**Implicit.** Entire, unqualified, complete.

**Several.** Separate.

**Quarto.** This word denotes a particular length and breadth of page. "A quarto" means "a quarto-sized volume."

**Contagion.** The contact of a healthy body with a diseased one.

**Inoculation.** A mode of imparting the disease by inserting some diseased flesh or blood into the body of a healthy person.

**Treatise.** A book written to explain or treat of a certain subject.

**Working out.** Parse "out." *Mid. Gram.* § 269.

**Definite.** Clear, precise.

**4. Indifference.** Silent neglect, unconcern.

**Hostility.** Opposition.

**Proceeded.** Went.

**To exhibit.** To show or make known. Which kind of Infinitive is this?

**To the profession.** To members of the profession, that is, the medical profession. Give other examples of an Abstract noun being used as a Common or concrete noun. *Mid. Gram.* § 43.

**The process of vaccination.** The method by which men could be vaccinated.

**Fruitlessly.** Vainly, to no purpose, without effect.

**Waiting.** Is this a Gerund or a Participle?

**5. Caricatured.** Ridiculed by ludicrous drawings. A caricature is a ludicrous portrait of a man.

**Abused.** Reproached, held up to public scorn.

**For his attempt.** On account of his attempt.

**Bestialise.** Turn into beasts.

**Systems.** Bodily systems; hence bodies.

**Donounced.** Loudly condemned.

**Clergy.** Ministers of religion.

**Diabolical.** Devilish.

**Averred.** Asserted, declared, alleged.

**It was averred.** What clause or clauses are here in apposition to "it"? *Mid. Gram.* § 151 (c).

**Became.** Why is this verb in the Past tense? *Mid. Gram.* § 422, rule 1.

**Ox-faced.** On this form of adjective see *Mid. Gram.* § 243.

**Abscesses.** Boils, gatherings.

**Transmuted.** Changed, transformed.

**Visage.** Face, countenance.

**6. Prevail.** Gain the upper hand ; triumph.

**Spread.** Is this verb Transitive or Intransitive ? *Mid. Gram.* § 180 (b).

**Absolutely.** Actually.

**Pelted.** Had stones thrown at them.

**Appeared.** Why is this verb in the Past tense ? *Mid. Gram.* § 422, rule 1.

**Of title.** Of high rank or birth, and therefore possessing a title.

**Be it remembered.** In what mood is this verb and in what sense is it used ? *Mid. Gram.* § 230 (2).

**Prejudices.** A prejudice is an unfavourable judgment that has been formed before inquiry or before giving the person or thing a trial.

**Came round.** Changed their minds.

**Of the merit.** In what sense is "of" here used ? In the sense of separation.

**Importance.** Value, usefulness.

**Came to be recognised.** Became recognised or acknowledged by the public.

**Jenner's cause.** The cause for which Jenner had laboured, viz. the adoption and recognition of vaccination.

**7. Modest.** Humble in manner and feeling.

**In his obscurity.** In the days when he lived an obscure life unknown to fame.

**To settle.** To remain permanent, to take up his permanent residence.

**In London.** Why is "in" here used rather than "at" ? *Mid. Gram.* § 275 (a). (Because London is a very large city.)

**He might.** In what sense is

"might" here used ? In the sense of possibility. *Mid. Gram.* p. 216, par. 6 (b). Why is the verb here in the Past tense ? *Mid. Gram.* § 422, rule 1.

**Command a practice.** Secure a (medical) practice.

**Morning.** Early part.

**Sequestered.** Secluded, retired, removed from public notice.

**Valley, mountain.** Valley here stands for the lowly and secluded kind of life. "Mountain" stands for the lofty and conspicuous state.

**Evening.** Later years of life.

**Meet.** Proper, becoming, suitable.

**All over.** "All" is here an adverb (see *Mid. Gram.* p. 141), and it qualifies the preposition "over." *Mid. Gram.* § 253 (a).

**His kind.** His race, viz. mankind.

**Vaccine.** The stuff taken from the cow's udder ; sounded as *vaccen*.

**Epoch.** Era, a point of time remarkable for some great event.

**Render it.** Render the epoch.

**It knocked.** The discovery knocked.

**Knocked at the doors.** Begged for admission.

**Academies.** Schools of medicine.

**8. Inventor.** Discoverer.

**Contemporaries.** Men of his own time.

A. He was not only an inventor and a man of genius—*Principal clause*.

B. But (he was) one—*Co-ord. to A.*

C. Who conquered the ignorance and prejudices of his contemporaries—*Adj. clause to B.*

D. (Who) refused greatness and riches—*Co-ord. to C.*

E. When they were offered him—*Adverb clause to D.*

F. And found his greatest satisfaction in the thought—*Co-ord. to C. and D.*

G. That he had made a discovery  
—*Noun-clause to F.*

H. Which has ever since saved  
Europe from the scourge of  
small-pox—*Adj. clause to G.*

They were offered him. Convert  
this sentence so as to make "him"  
the subject.

Scourge. Infliction, calamity.

At hand. Within reach, procurable.

### WORDS.

1. **Encounter.** Counter, contrary, en-counter.  
**Prevented.** Prevent, prevention, preventive.  
**Current.** Course, current, currently, currency, in-cur, oe-cur.  
**Secure.** Seecure (*verb*), secure (*adjective*), securely, security.  
**Trifling.** Trifle (*verb*), trifle (*noun*), trivial.  
**Significance.** Signify, signifieaut, signifieautly, significance, signification.
2. **Pursuing.** Pursue, pursuit.  
**Ordinary.** Order, ordain, ordinary, ordinarily.  
**Studies.** Study (*verb*), study (*noun*), student, studious, studiously, studio.  
**School.** Scholar, scholastic.  
**Attention.** Attend, attentive, attentively, attention.  
**Advice.** Advise (*noun*), advise (*verb*), advisedly.  
**Observation.** Observe, observation, observant, observantly.  
**Professional.** Profess, professedly, profession, professional, professionally.  
**Friends.** Friend, friendly, friendship, be-friend.  
**Expel.** Expulsion.  
**Persisted.** Persist, persistent, persistently.
3. **Practise.** Practise (*verb*), practice (*noun*), practitioner, practical, practically.

**Experiment.** Experiment, experimental, experience (*verb* or *noun*), expert.

**Published.** Public, publicly, publish, publication.

**Treatise.** Treat, treatment, treatise.

4. **Received.** Receive, receipt, receptive, receptacle.

**Active.** Act, active, actively, action, agent.

**Proceeded.** Proceed, procedure, proceeding, process.

5. **Abused.** Abuse (*verb*), abuse (*noun*), abusive, abusively.

**Bestialise.** Beast, beastly, bestial, bestialise.

**Species.** Special, specially specialise, specimen, specify.

**Matter.** Material.

**Diabolical.** Devil, devilish, diabolical.

**Voice.** Voceal, vowel, vociferous.

6. **Prevail.** Prevalent, prevalence.

**Violence.** Violent, violently, violate.

**Opposition.** Oppose, opposite, opponent.

**Appeared.** Appear, apparent, apparently, appearance, apparition.

**Title.** Titular, en-title.

**Gradually.** Grade, gradual, gradually, de-grade.

**Triumphed.** Triumph (*verb* or *noun*), triumphant, triumphal, triumphantly.

7. **Modest.** Modestly, modesty.

**Fame.** Famous, famously, defame, de-famatory.

**Benefactor.** Benefit (*noun* or *verb*), beneficial, beneficially, benefactor.

**Serve.** Service, servitude, servile, servilely, servant.

8. **Proud.** Proudly, pride (*noun* or *verb*).

**Inventor.** Invent, invention, inventive.

**Ignorance.** Ignore, ignorant, ignorance, ignorantly.

**Offered.** Offer, offering, oblation (Latin form).

**Satisfaction.** Satisfy, satisfaction, satisfactory, satisfactorily.

**Thought.** Think, thought, thoughtful, thoughtfully.

**People.** Popular, popularly, populace, population, populate, populous.

### 13.—Alice Fell; or Poverty.

The language of this poem is as simple as the event described in it.

The poet was taking a journey to Durham in a post-chaise or coach (for there were no railroads in England at the time when Wordsworth lived). The post-boy drove on at a great pace, as there were threats of a heavy down-pour of rain. On the way the poet was startled at hearing sounds of sobbing; but could not make out from what part of the coach the sounds came. So he called out to the post-boy to pull up the horses; but as soon as the coach stopped, the sound ceased. Finding nothing, they proceeded on their journey faster than ever; for by this time the rain was falling heavily. The same sound was again heard, even more distinctly than before; and the poet was now determined to find out where it came from. So he and the post-boy alighted; and after searching all round, they found a little girl seated on the plank at the back of the coach. The only words she sobbed out were, "My cloak." She then pointed to a tattered garment that was entangled in one of the wheels. After extricating this ragged cloak, he took her inside the coach, and tried to comfort her; but in vain. She went on weeping and sobbing for her tattered cloak, as if it had been the only friend she had in the world. And this probably it was: for she told him that she had no father or

mother, but simply belonged to Durham. On reaching the journey's end he gave the inn-keeper money enough to buy her a new cloak of the warmest material; and this made her very proud and happy.

The story shows that excessive poverty makes even the most trifling loss a matter of the keenest regret. Hence the double title of the poem—"Alice Fell; or Poverty."

**1. Postboy.** Postilion; a man who rides on one of the pair of horses by which the coach or chaise is drawn. He rides on one horse and drives both of them.

**With fierce career.** At a very rapid pace.

**Threatening.** Threatening a heavy downfall of rain.

**Had drowned, etc.** Had extinguished or obscured the moon.

**Smitten.** Startled, struck.

**Startling.** Unexpected.

**2. As if, etc.** The sound seemed to be on every side of the chaise, as if the wind was blowing on all sides at once. The meaning is that he could not tell from what part of the chaise the sound seemed to come.

**And more and more.** More and more distinctly. "More" is here an adverb.

**Many ways.** In what case is "ways"? *Mid. Gram.* § 386 (5).

**To follow with.** To keep company with.

**Still.** Continually, without any intermission.

**As before.** As (I had heard it) before. What part of speech is "before" in this place?

**3. At the word.** At my bidding.

**4. Smacked his whip.** Gave a crack with his whip; the sound produced by giving a rapid jerk to the lash.

**Fast.** Rapidly.

**Scampered.** Ran forward with all speed.



**Through the rain.** These words show that the rain, which in stanza 1 was said to be threatening, had now begun to fall.

**Bade.** For the two forms of the Past tense of this verb see *Mid. Gram.* p. 207.

**Halt.** Stop his horses. In what mood is this verb? *Mid. Gram.* § 233 (a).

**5. Alighting.** Coming down from the chaise.

**Piteous.** Exciting pity.

**6. Would break.** On the Intransitive use of "break" see *Mid. Gram.* § 180 (b).

**From off.** On the use of double prepositions see *Mid. Gram.* § 274 (2).

**Innocent.** Simple, childish.

**7. What ails you?** What distresses you?

**I saw it.** I saw the cloak.

**A weather-beaten, etc.** As weather-beaten a rag as ever dangled from a garden scarecrow.

**Dangled.** Hung loosely.

**Garden.** Parse this word. *Mid. Gram.* § 388.

**Scarecrow.** The sham figure of a man fixed upon a pole in order to scare away crows or other birds. The figure is usually made of straw covered with old clothes and rags.

**8. Nave and spoke.** The nave is the central part or box of a wheel. The spokes are the thin bars of wood which join the fellow or outer rim to the centre.

**Joint pains.** The combined efforts of the child, the poet, and the postilion.

**Unloosed.** Disentangled, extricated.

**9. Lonesome.** Solitary.

**Half wild.** Half mad with vexation about her damaged cloak.

**10. Insensible to all relief.** Inconsolable, incapable of feeling any relief.

**11. Durham.** A town in the north of England.

**And said.** What is the object to the verb "said"? *Mid. Gram.* § 318.

**Alice Fell.** In what case are these nouns? See *Mid. Gram.* § 384 (2).

**12. I belong to Durham.** She belongs to neither father nor mother, only to Durham.

**Very heart.** Inmost heart.

**And all.** And all her grief.

**For her cloak.** On account of her cloak.

**13. Drove on.** The verb is here used in a Passive sense—"was driven on." *Mid. Gram.* § 195 (b).

**Her only friend.** She wept for her cloak as if it was the only friend she had. Is "only" here an adjective or an adverb? *Mid. Gram.* § 415 (a).

**Would be pacified.** Allowed herself to be comforted.

Analysis of stanza 13:—

**A.** The chaise drove on—*Principal clause.*

**B.** Our journey's end was nigh—*Co-ord. to A.*

**C.** And sitting by my side she wept—*Co-ord. to B.*

**D.** As (she would have wept)—*Adv. clause to C.*

**E.** If she had lost her only friend—*Adv. clause to D.*

**F.** Nor would (she) be pacified—*Co-ord. to C.*

**14. Tavern.** Parse this word. *Mid. Gram.* § 388. The "tavern" means the inn or public-house at which the chaise stopped.

**We post.** What sort of Present tense is this? *Mid. Gram.* § 212. "We post" means "we travel in the post-chaise."

**The host.** The inn-keeper.

**To buy.** Which Infinitive is this? *Mid. Gram.* § 236 (a).

**15. Duffil.** A strong warm kind of cloth made by the hand, once

commonly worn in the north of England.

**Man.** Any man, any shopkeeper.

**As man can sell.** As warm a cloak as (any cloak which) a man can sell. What is the object to the verb "sell"?

**Proud creature.** Proud little thing; said partly in pity and partly in affection for the helpless orphan child.

### WORDS.

1. **Clouds.** Cloud, cloudy, be-cloud.  
**Ear.** Auricular (Latin form).
- Sound.** Sound (*noun*), sound (*verb*), sonorous.
5. **Piteous.** Pity (*noun*), pity (*verb*), piteous, piteously.
6. **Break.** Breach.
8. **Joint.** Join, joint, jointure, jointly.
- Pains.** Pain (*verb* or *noun*), painful, painfully, punish.
12. **Insensible.** Sense, sensible, sensibly, sensation.
- Poor.** Poorly, poverty, pauper, pauperise.
- Grief.** Grieve, grievous, grievously.
13. **Pacified.** Peace, peaceable, peaceably, pacify, appease.
14. **Money.** Pecuniary (Latin form).
15. **Proud.** Pride (*verb*), pride (*noun*), proudly.

### 14.—On the Treatment of Inferiors.

#### § 1. THE GENTLEMAN OR MAN OF BREEDING.

**Of breeding.** Of good birth and of manners suitable to his birth.

1. **There are.** Why is "there" here used? *Mid. Gram.* § 29.

**Tests.** Marks, proofs, indications.

**Known.** Distinguished from other men.

**May be known.** Can be known. In what sense is "may" here used? In the sense of possibility. *Mid. Gram.* p. 216, par. 6 (b).

**Never fails.** Is unerring; never turns out wrong.

**How.** In what manner.

**Conduct himself.** Behave.

**The officer.** The military officer, as captain, colonel, etc.

**Than himself.** In what case is "himself"?

Analyse the last sentence:—

A. How does the officer treat his men—*Principal clause*.

B. The employer (treat) his servants—*Co-ord. to A*.

C. The master (treat) his pupils—*Co-ord. to A and B*.

D. And man in every station (treat) those—*Co-ord. to A, B, and C*.

E. Who are weaker—*Adj. clause to D*.

F. Than (he) himself (is weak)—*Adv. clause to E*.

2. **Discretion.** Judgment.

**Forbearance.** Patience, command of temper.

**With which.** Point out the antecedent or antecedents to "which."

**Crucial.** Decisive; as if by bringing a man to the cross and submitting him to torture. "Crucial" is the adjective form of "cross."

3. **Bullies.** Harasses, gives needless and unprovoked annoyance.

**Not in a position, etc.** Not so situated as to be able to resist.

**Snob.** A vulgar-minded fellow.

**Tyrannises over.** Persecutes, bullies.

**The weak.** The noun "men" is understood. *Mid. Gram.* § 128 (1).

**No true man.** Not a real man, but something below a man, viz. a slave.

**Is but.** What is the meaning of "but" here, and how do you parse it? *Mid. Gram.* p. 142.

**Turned inside out.** "Inside out" is an adverbial phrase; "the inside turned out, and the outside turned in": a slave within, a tyrant without.

**Consciousness of strength.** The knowledge that one possesses strength. "Strength" here means physical strength.

**Right-hearted.** Well disposed. On this form of adjective see *Mid. Gram.* § 243.

**Imparts.** Gives.

**Uses it.** Uses strength.

**Like a giant.** In what ease is "giant"? *Mid. Gram.* § 386 (6).

**4. Consideration.** Thoughtfulness.

**Inferiors.** Is this a noun or an adjective? It is an adjective used as a noun. We must call it a noun, because it has the noun-ending for Plurals.

**Dependants.** Men depending on him. The noun is "dependant"; the adjective is "dependent." Compare "confident" and "confidant."

**As well as his equals.** In this phrase is the stress or emphasis thrown upon "equals" or upon the preceding words "inferiors" and "dependants"? See *Mid. Gram.* § 289 (b).

**Self-respect, etc.** The meaning is that a gentleman will respect men who respect themselves.

**Pervade.** Permeate, diffuse itself through and through.

**Uncharitable construction.** Unfavourable interpretation; seeing a man's conduct in the worst light; interpreting it in the worst sense; not giving him the benefit of a doubt; thinking of him as badly as possible.

**Incur the risk.** Expose himself to the risk.

**Committing.** Is this a Verbal noun or a Verbal adjective?

**Wrong.** Injustice.

**Forbearing.** Patient and forgiving.

**Weaknesses.** Infirmities; the weak points in a man's character.

**Failings.** Shortcomings, defects.

**Errors.** Mistakes in judgment or conduct.

**His beast.** His horse or dog.

**His gifts.** His natural abilities of any kind.

**Puffed up.** Swollen with pride, uplifted, elated.

**Depressed.** Discouraged, disheartened.

**Obtrude.** Thrust forward.

**Patronising air.** An air or manner of superiority, by which the man on whom the favour is conferred will be made to feel that he is inferior.

**Said of.** In what sense is "of" here used? In the sense of "concerning."

**Being made.** Is this a Gerund or a Participle?

**Repent of it.** Feel sorry for having done it; suffer any ill effects afterwards.

**That is saying.** "That" is here a Demonstrative pronoun. Point out its antecedent. See *Mid. Gram.* § 152 (c).

**Saying.** Is this a Gerund or a Participle?

**5. The gentleman.** A gentleman. *Mid. Gram.* § 118.

**Characterised.** Distinguished, marked.

**Sacrifice of self.** Giving up his comforts or claims for the benefit of others.

**Occurrences.** Events.

**In illustration of.** As an example of.

**Anecdote.** A short tale about some actual event.

**Cite.** Quote, relate.

**Gallant.** Brave.

**When mortally wounded.** What verb is understood after "when"? *Mid. Gram.* § 322.

**Mortally.** Fatally, inevitably.

**Aboutir.** This is a bay reaching up to the mouth of the Nile, about twelve miles to the east of Alexandria. A naval battle was fought in this bay between the French and English A.D. 1801. Here Sir Ralph Abercromby landed his troops against the French, whom he defeated in battle, but at the loss of his own life.

**Litter.** A chair or bed for the conveyance of wounded soldiers.

**On board.** This is a prepositional phrase (*Mid. Gram.* § 274, 5). "On board" means *on the deck or boards of a ship.*

**One of the ships.** What noun is qualified by "one"?

**To ease.** Which Infinitive is this?

**Considerable.** Much.

**From which.** What is the antecedent to "which"? Is it here used in a Continuative or a Restrictive sense?

A. In illustration of this we may cite the anecdote of Sir Ralph Abercromby—*Principal clause.*

B. Of whom it is related—*Co-ord. to A.*

C. That he was carried in a litter on board one of the ships—*Noun-clause to B.*

D. When (he was) mortally wounded—*Adv. clause to C.*

E. And to ease his pain a soldier's blanket was placed under his head.—*Co-ord. to C.*

F. From which he experienced considerable relief—*Co-ord. to E.*

**Blanket.** A thick woollen cloth for covering the body.

**Dying agony.** The pangs of death.

**Would not deprive.** Was not willing to deprive. Here "would" is merely the Past tense of "will," and is not in the Subjunctive mood.

**Private soldier.** Any soldier who is not of the rank of an officer is called a "private."

**Incident.** Event.

**As good.** As profitable; as instructive.

**In its way.** In the purpose or design for which it is told. What is the purpose? What is the lesson that it teaches? "The sacrifice of self for the benefit of others."

**Sidney.** Sir Philip Sidney received a mortal wound at the battle of Zutphen A.D. 1586. When he was dying of thirst, he handed his cup of water to a soldier, as he saw that this man needed the water as much as himself. This is a similar example of "the sacrifice of self for the benefit of another."

**Zutphen.** A strong fort in the north of Holland.

**Handing.** Is this a Gerund or a Participle?

**That of the dying Sidney.** Is "that" here a Demonstrative adjective or a Demonstrative pronoun? In other words, does it *qualify* some noun expressed or understood? or does it merely *stand for* some noun which has gone before? *Mid. Gram.* §§ 148, 149.

**Quaint.** Writing in a quaint or uncommon style.

**Old Fuller.** He was an old English writer.

**Sums up.** Recapitulates.

**In describing that.** Show that "that" is here a Demonstrative pronoun and point out its antecedent.

**Drake.** A distinguished Admiral of the time of Queen Elizabeth. He was second in command of the English fleet that was sent against the Spanish Armada. Born A.D. 1545.

**Chaste.** Pure, free of immoral practices.

**Dealings.** Treatment of other men.

**Moment.** Importance.

**Wont.** Accustomed.  
**Trusty.** Trustworthy, reliable.  
**Contemning.** Despising.

## WORDS.

1. **Many.** Multitude (Latin form), manifold.  
**Conduct.** Con-duct' (verb), conduct (noun), conduce, conducive, conductor.  
**Servants.** Serve, service, servaut, servile, servitude.  
**Station.** Station (noun), station (verb), stationary, stationery.  
**Weaker.** Weak, weakly, weakness, weaken.
2. **Discretion.** Discern, discreet, discreetly, discretion.  
**Crucial.** Cross, crucial, crucify.  
**Test.** Testify, testimony.  
**Sorry.** Sorrow (noun or verb), sorrowful, sorrowfully.
3. **Tyrannises.** Tyrant, tyrannous, tyrannical, tyrannise.  
**True.** Trow, truth, truthful, truly.  
**Strength.** Strong, strongly, strength, strengthen.  
**Character.** Characterise, characteristic.
- Careful.** Care (noun or verb), careful, carefully.  
**Giant.** Gigantic.
4. **Consideration.** Consider, considerate, considerable, considerably, considerably.  
**Respect.** Respect (noun or verb), respective, respectively, respectful, respectfully, respectable, respectably.  
**Whole.** Wholly, heal, hale, wholesome, health.  
**Construction.** Construe, construct, coustructive, construction.
- Committing.** Committal, commisiou.
- Wrong.** Wrong (noun, verb, or adjective), wrougful, wrongfully, wrongly.

**Errors.** Err, error, erroneous, erratic.

**Success.** Succeed, success, successive, succession, successful.

**Freely.** Free (verb or noun), freedom.

**Patronising.** Patron, patronage, patronise.

**Receive.** Receipt, recipient, reception, receptive, receptively.

**Repent.** Repeutance, penitent, penitently.

5. **Daily.** Day, daily, diurnal (Latin form), journal.

**Gallant.** Gal-lant (noun), gal-lant (adjective), gallantry, gallantly.

**Incident.** Incidental, incidentally.

6. **Sums up.** Sum (noun), sum (verb), summary (noun or adjective), summarily, summarise.

**Chaste.** Chastity, chasten, chastise.

**Contemning.** Contempt, contemptuous, contemptible.

## 2. UNDUE RESERVE OF A MASTER REBUKED.

**Reserve.** Reticeence, silence.

**Anson.** The name of a distinguished sailor—one of the first men who took a voyage round the world.

**Traveller.** In what case is this word, and why? *Mid. Gram.* § 384 (3).

**Home.** In what case is this? *Mid. Gram.* § 386 (5).

**To ask.** Which Infinitive is this word?

**He said.** What conjunction is understood after "said"? *Mid. Gram.* § 317.

**But that.** "But" is here a preposition in the sense of "except." *Mid. Gram.* p. 142. Point out its object. *Mid. Gram.* § 273 and § 316 (c).

**But in the way, etc.** Here, too,

*but* is a preposition; and means "except (what he said) in the way of command." Hence the object to "but" is the clause "what he said" understood.

## 15.—Lost Opportunities.

### § 1. SAYINGS AND PRECEPTS.

**1. Years.** In what case is this? *Mid. Gram.* § 386 (5).

**Nap.** A short sleep.

**Opened, shut.** Explain the Intransitive use of these verbs? *Mid. Gram.* § 180 (b).

**3. Dam.** Block up or shut in by an embankment.

**5. How many simple sentences are there in this paragraph? Six.**

**A.** If the clouds be full of rain—*Adv. clause to B.*

**B.** They empty themselves upon the earth—*Principal clause.*

**C.** And if the tree fall towards the south—*Adv. clause to E.*

**D.** Or (if the tree fall) towards the north—*Co-ord. to C.*

**E.** There shall it lie in the place—*Co-ord. to B.*

**F.** Where it falleth—*Adj. clause to E.*

**6. Should be delayed.** In what sense is "should" here used? In the sense of duty. *Mid. Gram.* p. 214 (c).

**Consider.** What is the object to this Transitive verb?

**Approaches.** What is the object to this verb? *Mid. Gram.* § 179 and § 320.

How many simple sentences are there here? Six.

**A.** No good act should be delayed—*Principal clause.*

**B.** Which can be performed to-day—*Adj. clause to A.*

**C.** For death does not consider—*Co-ord. to A.*

**D.** Whether the man has done his duty—*Noun-clause to C.*

**E.** Or (whether the man has) not done his duty—*Co-ord. to D.*

**F.** (Whom) he approaches—*Adj. clause to D.*

**Attachment.** Love, preference for one person over another.

**Antipathy.** Hatred.

### § 2. PARABLE OF THE TEN VIRGINS.

**To meet.** Which Infinitive is this?

**Tarried.** Stopped on the way.

**Slumbered and slept.** "Slumber" is a light kind of sleep. The meaning is that they first dozed or fell into a light sleep, and then into a heavy or sound one. "Slept" implies a sound sleep.

**They that were ready.** Viz. the five virgins who had been wise enough to take oil with their lamps.

**Open.** Open the door.

### § 3. TOO LATE.

**For that.** For that reason.

**We repent.** We are sorry and penitent.

**Learning this.** Learning how sorry we are. On the meaning implied in this participle see *Mid. Gram.* § 244 (a).

**Repent.** Forgive us; repent of his anger.

**Heard.** What conjunction is understood after "heard"? *Mid. Gram.* § 317.

**Sweet.** Forgiving, kind, merciful.

**Though late.** What verb is understood after "though"? *Mid. Gram.* § 322.

### WORDS.

**§ 1. Water.** Water (*verb* or *noun*), watery, aqueous (Latin form).

**Full.** Fully, fulness, fill, fulfil.

**Due.** Debt, duty, dutiful, dutifully.

**Friend.** Friendly, amicable, (Latin form), friendship, befriend.

§ 2. **Foolish.** Fool, folly, foolishly, be-fool.

**Watch.** Wake, awake, watchful, watchfully.

§ 3. **Repent.** Penitent, penitence, repent, repentance.

## 16.—The Whale.

### § 1. THE WHALE IN GENERAL.

1. **Ever yet.** Up to the present time.

**To hold.** Which Infinitive is this?

**To exceed.** This is the Simple or Noun-Infinitive and is the Complement to the verb "has been found." See *Mid. Gram.* § 178.

2. **To take.** Which Infinitive is this?

**Fish.** Mention any other nouns beside "fish" which have the same form in the plural as in the singular. *Mid. Gram.* § 79.

**Water.** What kind of noun is this? *Mid. Gram.* § 40.

**Alive.** Prove that this word is not an adjective. (It is not an adjective because it cannot be used attributively; thus we cannot say, "an alive fish." *Mid. Gram.* § 113). On the form of adverbs like "alive" see *Mid. Gram.* § 267 (4).

**A little.** What part of speech is this? It is here an adverb and not an adjective. Show the difference between "little" and "a little." *Mid. Gram.* § 374.

**Sucking.** On the Intransitive use of this verb see *Mid. Gram.* § 180 (a).

3. **There are.** Parse "there." Why is it here used? *Mid. Gram.* § 29.

**This enables it.** Show that "this" is here a Demonstrative pronoun, and not a Demonstrative adjective. Point out its antecedent. *Mid. Gram.* § 152 (c).

**Gills.** The openings at the sides

of a fish's head, through which the fish breathes.

**What look like, etc.** On this use of the Relative pronoun see *Mid. Gram.* § 159 (b).

**Are placed.** What is the subject to this verb? Break up "what" into "the things which," and then "the things" is subject to the verb "are placed." Or we could say that the Noun-clause "what look like fins," is subject to the verb "are placed."

**Almost under.** Here the adverb "almost" qualifies the preposition "under." *Mid. Gram.* § 253 (a).

**To suit.** Which Infinitive is this?

**Aquatic life.** Life in water as opposed to life on land.

4. **Move.** See *Mid. Gram.* § 180 (b).

**Of hunger.** "Of" is here used in the sense of cause.

**Death.** What kind of object is this? *Mid. Gram.* § 183 (a).

5. **Enormous.** Immense, prodigious.

**So-called fins.** This means that, though the term "fins" is commonly applied to them, it is not quite correct.

**Whenever.** What is the force of the "ever" added to a Relative pronoun or Relative adverb? *Mid. Gram.* § 159 (c).

6. **Dives.** Goes down into the water. Point out the causal form of this verb. *Mid. Gram.* § 186.

**Are carried.** Why is this verb in the plural number? *Mid. Gram.* § 396.

7. **To feed.** Which Infinitive is this?

8. Analysis of the sentence "the upper part," etc.

A. The upper part has two holes at the top—*Principal clause.*

B. Through which the whale spurts out water—*Adj. clause to A.*

C. And it either does this for sport—*Co-ord. to A.*

D. Or (it does this)—*Co-ord. to C.*

**K.** When it has more water in its mouth than—*Adverb clause to D.*

**F.** (What) it desires to keep—*Noun-clause to E (object to "than"; see Mid. Gram. § 284 (b)).*

**Blow-holes.** Holes for blowing out water.

**Ejection.** Throwing out.

**9. Whalebone.** In what case is this? *Mid. Gram. § 384 (2).*

**10. Those.** Is this word here a Demonstrative adjective or a Demonstrative pronoun? *Mid. Gram. § 152 (b).*

**12. A huge boat.** In what case is "boat"? *Mid. Gram. § 386 (6).*

**As if it were.** As it would do if it were asleep.

**Asleep.** Is this an adjective or an adverb? *Mid. Gram. § 267 (2).*

**Not being covered.** There is a sense of cause or reason implied in this participle. See *Mid. Gram. § 244 (b).* The absence of hair (which would give some resistance to the water) helps the whale to glide rapidly along.

**13. For any length of time.** For a long time.

**To take breath.** Which Infinitive is this?

**To blow or spout.** Which Infinitive is this?

**Begins.** What is the object to this Transitive verb?

## § 2. WHALE-FISHING.

**1.** Break up the first sentence into its several clauses:—

**A.** If the whale were really a fish—*Adverb clause to D.*

**B.** And (if it were) not a beast—*Co-ord. to A.*

**C.** That gives suck to its young—*Adjective clause to B.*

**D.** It would be impossible to hunt it—*Principal clause.*

**E.** For in that case it could remain under water as long—*Co-ord. to D.*

**F.** As it liked—*Adv. clause to E.*

**G.** And no one could come near it—*Co-ord. to E.*

**2. Each man.** In what case is this, and why? See *Mid. Gram. § 384 (5).*

**3. Monster.** Enormous animal.

**Finding itself.** In this participle there is an implied meaning of reason or time. See *Mid. Gram. § 244.*

**Goes on diving.** Continues diving. Is "diving" here a Gerund or a Participle? *Mid. Gram. § 182.*

**In order to avoid.** The phrase "in order" is sometimes added to the Gerundial Infinitive for the sake of clearness. It denotes Purpose.

## § 3. THE KINDS OF WHALES.

**1. Frequents.** Inhabits.

**2. Species.** Kinds, stocks.

**(b) Besides.** Point out the difference between "besides" and "beside." "Besides" means *in addition to*. "Beside" means *near or by the side of*.

**Eight inches long.** In what case is "inches"?

**(d) Animal.** In what case is "animal"? *Mid. Gram. § 384 (2).*

## § 4. THE USES OF THE WHALE.

**1. Tow it.** Pull it through the water by ropes.

**Ashore.** See *Mid. Gram. § 274 (6).*

**2. Layer.** A lining of matter spread over some other kind of matter is called a layer.

**3. Carcass.** Dead body.

**Whenever.** What is the force of "ever," when it is added to a Relative pronoun or Relative adverb? *Mid. Gram. § 159 (c).*

**Putrid.** Raneid, unfit to eat.

**4. Oil.** What kind of noun is "oil"? *Mid. Gram. § 40.*



**Like steel.** In what case is "steel"? *Mid. Gram.* § 386 (6).

**5. Cavities.** Hollow places.

**6. First.** What part of speech is "first" here?

**Exposed.** Laid open.

**Making candles.** Is "making" here a Gerund or a Participle?

**A hundred barrels.** Explain how "a hundred" (Singular) can be used before "barrels" (Plural). *Mid. Gram.* § 101.

**7. Ambergris.** This is sounded as am-ber-grees.

**It long remained.** To what does "it" here refer? *Mid. Gram.* § 151 (c).

**8. Laid up.** Deposited.

### § 5. LINES ON THE WHALE.

**Glee.** Playful delight, sport.

**Swamp.** Submerge, throw under water.

**The depths.** The deep places or parts. The Abstract noun has been made a common one by prefixing an article and by pluralising.

### WORDS.

§ 1. 1. **Exceed.** Excess, exceedingly, excessive, excessively.

**Exceptional.** Except (*verb*), except (*preposition*), exception, exceptional, exceptionally.

2. **Commonly.** Common, commune, community, communicate.

**Compelled.** Compel, compulsory, compulsorily, compulsion.

**Produced.** Pro-duee' (*verb*), prod'-uee (*noun*), product, productive, production.

**Head.** Capital (Latin form).

3. **Blood.** Bloody, sanguinary (Latin form).

**Enables.** Able, ably, ability, enable.

**Eye.** Ocular (Latin form).

6. **Water.** Watery, aqueous (Latin form), aquatic.

**Multitude.** Many (*adjective*), multitude (Latin form).

**Current.** Current (*noun* or *adjective*), course, currently, currency, incur, occur.

**Flows.** Flow (*verb* or *noun*), flux (*noun*), fluid, fluent.

7. **Width.** Wide, widely, width, widen.

8. **Part.** Part (*verb* or *noun*), partly, partial, partially, partiality, de-part.

**Sport.** Sport (*verb* or *noun*), sportive, sportively.

**Violence.** Violent, violently, violence, violate.

**Height.** High, highly, highness, height, heighten.

9. **Ox.** Bovine (Latin form).

12. **Surface.** Superficial, superficially.

**Sea.** Marine or maritime (Latin form).

**Depth.** Deep, deeply, depth, deepen.

**Oily.** Oil (*noun* or *verb*), oily, oleaginous.

13. **Times.** Time (*noun* or *verb*), tense, timely, temporal (Latin form), temporary, temporarily.

§ 2. 1. **Really.** Real, reality, really, realise.

**Beast.** Bestial, bestialise.

2. **Easily.** Ease (*noun* or *verb*), easy, easily, ease.

3. **Forced.** Force (*noun* or *verb*), forcible, forcibly, enforce.

**Pursuers.** Pursue, pursuit.

4. **Men.** Man, human (Latin form).

**Destroy.** Destructive, destructively, destruction.

**Defence.** Defend, defence, defensive.

**Provided.** Provide, providence, prudence, provision, provisionally.

§ 3. **Varieties.** Vary, various, variously, variety, variable.

**Frequents.** Frequent' (*verb*),

fre'-quent (*adjective*), frequently, frequency.

**Islands.** Island, islander, insular, isolate.

(b) **Teeth.** Tooth, dental (Latin form), dentist.

(d) **Solitary.** Sole, solely, solitude, solitary.

**Gregarious.** Ag-gre-gate.

**Societies.** Social, socially, society, as-soci-ate.

§ 4. 2. **Tongue.** Lingual (Latin form), linguist.

**Flesh.** Fleshly, carnal (Latin form).

**Extracted.** Ex-tract' (*verb*), ex'-tract (*noun*), extraction.

3. **Succession.** Succeed, success, successive, successful, succession.

5. **Liquid.** Liquor, liquefy, liquid, liquidly, liquefaction.

6. **Exposed.** Expose, exposure, exposition.

**Air.** Airy, aerial.

8. **Value** (*noun* or *verb*), valuable, valuation.

**Present.** Pres'-ent (*noun*), present' (*verb*).

§ 5. **Shake.** Shake (*verb* or *noun*).

## 17.—Solon and Cræsus.

This story is so well known that Solon has become a common noun for a wise man, and Cræsus for a rich one. Thus we say "he is a Solon in wisdom." "He is the Cræsus of the family." See *Mid. Gram.* § 36 (b).

The event is said to have occurred about 500 years before Christ, and was first related by the Greek historian Herodotus, from whom the account given below has been freely translated.

1. **Lydian empire.** This empire embraced the western half of Asia Minor.

**Climax.** Highest point.

**There came.** Why is "there" added to the verb? Has it any signification? *Mid. Gram.* § 29.

**Sages.** Wise men. "Sage" is properly an adjective. It is here used as a noun in the Plural number. Adjectives proper have no Plural form distinct from the Singular.

**On his travels.** Making a tour.

**Athens.** A city of ancient Greece.

**Pretence.** An alleged reason, but not the real one.

**To see the world.** To see new places and things.

**To see.** Which Infinitive is this?

**To avoid.** Which Infinitive is this? What is the object after the verb "avoid."

**Sanction.** Consent, permission.

**Repeal.** Abrogate, cancel, annul.

**For ten years by.** What is the object to the preposition "by"? *Mid. Gram.* § 273, and § 316 (c).

2. **As well as.** In this sentence, is the chief emphasis laid upon the word "account" or upon the words "from a desire"? *Mid. Gram.* § 289 (b).

**In the course of which.** Is "which" here used in a Restrictive or a Continuative sense? Explain the difference.

**Conduct.** Why is the "to" left out before this verb? *Mid. Gram.* § 233 (a).

**And show.** How many objects are there to the verb "show"? Describe them. *Mid. Gram.* § 177.

**Magnificence.** Splendour.

3. **Stranger.** In what case is this? *Mid. Gram.* § 384 (4).

**Heard much.** Parse "much." *Mid. Gram.* p. 142.

**Of thy wisdom.** In what sense is "of" here used? In the sense of "concerning."

**Inquire.** Point out the object to this verb.

**Felt sure.** Was certain, was convinced.

4. **Astonishment.** Surprise, wonder, amazement.

**Demanded.** This is a stronger word than "inquired." It means that he inquired in a tone of command or authority.

**Surpassingly.** Extremely, pre-eminently.

**Routed.** Put to the rout, defeated and threw into confusion.

**Gallantly.** Bravely.

**Gave, paid.** Name and describe the objects to each of these verbs.

5. **Instruct.** Edify, admonish.

**Enumerating.** Counting out, mentioning in detail one after another.

**Particulars.** This word is properly an adjective; it is here used as a noun in the Plural number.

**State.** This is a Transitive verb. Point out its object. *Mid. Gram.* § 273 and § 316 (c).

**Would be given.** Show why this verb can take an object in the Passive voice. By what name are such objects known? *Mid. Gram.* § 193.

6. **Their means.** Means of livelihood, pecuniary means.

**Ended with.** Possessed of.

**Public games.** Games at wrestling, horse-racing, jumping, throwing the quoit, etc.

**About to be held.** Parse "about" and "to be held." *Mid. Gram.* § 235 (d).

**Now.** On the force of "now" see *Mid. Gram.* § 289 (d).

**Was to have been drawn.** Was intended to have been drawn.

**Home.** In what case is this? See *Mid. Gram.* § 386 (5).

**Too late.** Later than was necessary for the purpose needed.

**Furlongs.** In what case is "furlongs"?

**Applauded.** Praised.

**Closed.** Came to an end.

**Extolling.** Praising in very high terms.

**Overjoyed.** "Over" means

"greatly," "much." Hence "overjoyed" means "much delighted."

**Straight before.** Immediately in front of; here the adverb "straight" qualifies the preposition "before." *Mid. Gram.* § 253 (a).

**Her prayer being ended.** Explain the construction. *Mid. Gram.* § 384 (5).

**Of the holy banquet.** "Banquet" means "feast." It was customary at such festivals to eat the flesh of the animal offered in sacrifice, and this meal was hence called "a holy banquet."

**Asleep.** On this form of adverb see *Mid. Gram.* § 267 (2).

**Statues.** Stone-figures after the likeness of any one.

7. **Talking.** Is this a Verbal noun or a Verbal adjective?

**Broke in.** Suddenly thrust his words into the conversation.

**Despised.** Set at naught.

8. **Indeed.** On this form of the adverb see *Mid. Gram.* § 267 (2).

**I know.** Point out the object to this verb.

**Whole of limb.** Uninjured in limb.

**He end.** What is implied here in the use of the Subjunctive mood? *Mid. Gram.* § 230 (4).

**Lacking.** Deficient.

**To make.** What kind of Transitive verb is this? *Mid. Gram.* § 178.

**It behoves us.** We ought. This is called an Impersonal verb because the pronoun denoting the person is placed after it in the Objective case.

**A gleam.** A bright period. As a bright sunny day is followed by the darkness of night, so the sunshine or gleam of happiness may be followed by the gloom of misfortune.

9. **Which Cræsus.** Show the case of "which" here.

**And which brought.** Show the case of "which."

**Indifference.** Unconcern.

**Arrant fool.** Utter fool.

**Wait.** In what mood is this verb?

**The king witnessed—saw the end.** Analyse this sentence.

**A.** The king witnessed his departure with much indifference—*Principal clause.*

**B.** For he believed him to be an arrant fool—*Co-ord. to A.*

**C.** Since he took no account of present good—*Adverb clause to B.*

**D.** But bade men always wait—*Co-ord. to C.*

**E.** Till they saw the end—*Adverb clause to D.*

**10. A few years.** In what case is "years"?

**Fell.** What is the causal form of this Intransitive verb? *Mid. Gram.* § 186.

**Having reigned.** Is this a Verbal noun or a Verbal adjective?

**Plunged, expecting.** These participles qualify the Possessive pronoun "his."

**Divine.** Heaven-sent.

**11. Interpreters.** The Persians (to which race Cyrus belonged) did not understand the Greek language spoken by Croesus; so Cyrus sent some interpreters.

**Three times.** In what case is "times"?

**Inquire.** Point out the object or objects to this verb.

**Drew near.** On the Intransitive use of "drew" see *Mid. Gram.* § 180 (b).

**Held his peace.** Remained silent.

**Importunate.** Persistent.

**Philosopher.** A sage or wise man, a seeker after wisdom.

**He told them that, etc.** Convert the whole of the sentence from the Indirect to the Direct narration, down to "themselves happy."

**Made light of it.** Treated it as worthless.

**Instability.** Insecurity, uncertainty.

**Considered.** What kind of Transitive verb is this? *Mid. Gram.* § 178.

**12. Bethinking himself.** Causing himself to think or reflect.

**Retribution.** Suffering the very evil which he was inflicting on another.

### WORDS.

**1. Conquests.** Conquer, conqueror.

**Empire.** Imperial, imperious.

**Intended.** Intend, intent, intention, intentional, intentionally.

**Pretence.** Pretend, pretence, pretentious.

**Laws.** Law, legal, loyal, lawyer.

**2. Received.** Receive, receipt, reception, receptive, receptacle.

**Royal.** Reign, royal, royally, royalty.

**Conduct.** Con-duct' (*verb*), con'-duct (*noun*).

**3. Stranger.** Strange, strangely, stranger, estrange, estrange-ment.

**Knowledge.** Know, knowing, knowingly.

**Convictions.** Con-vict' (*verb*), con'-vict (*noun*).

**4. Prosperous.** Prosper, prosperous, prosperously, prosperity.

**Children.** Child, childish, child-ishly, childhood.

**5. Example.** Exemplary, exemplify.

**6. Endowed.** Endue, endow, endowment.

**Strength.** Strong, strongly, strength, strengthen.

**Oxen.** Ox, bovine (*Latin form*).

**Applauded.** Applaud, applause, plausible.

**Image.** Imaginary, imagination.

**7. Angrily.** Anger, angry, angrily.

**Private.** Privately, privacy.

**Rich.** Riches, richly, en-rich, enrichment.

8. **Assuredly.** Assure, assurance, assured, assuredly.  
**Complete.** Complete (*verb*), complete (*adj.*), completely, completion, complement.  
**Unite.** One, unit, unity, union, unite, united, unitedly.  
**Number.** Numeral, e-numerate.
9. **Presents.** Pre-seut' (*verb*), pres'-ent (*noun*).  
**Fool.** Folly, foolish, foolishly, be-fool.
10. **Prisoner.** Prison, prisoner, imprisonment, imprisonment.  
**Silence.** Silence (*noun*), silence (*verb*), silent, silently.
11. **Questioned.** Question (*verb*), question (*noun*), questionable, questionably.  
**Exclaimed.** Exclamation, exclamatory.  
**Explain.** Explanation, explanatory.  
**Instability.** Stable, establish, establishment, unstable, instability.  
**Applied.** Apply, applicant, application, applicable.  
**Happy.** Hap, perhaps, haply, happen, happy, happily, happiness.
- 18.—**Proverbs that are Pernicious.**
1. **There are.** Why is "there" used here? *Mid. Gram.* § 29.  
**Conspicuous.** Evident, prominent, manifest. Analyse this paragraph:—  
 A. There are some popular proverbs—*Principal clause*.  
 B. That are apt to do a great deal of harm—*Adj. clause to A*.  
 C. Because they can more easily be applied to a bad purpose—*Adv. clause to B*.  
 D. Than (they can be applied) to a good one—*Adv. clause to C*.  
 E. And because the amount of

truth is not so conspicuous—*Co-ord. to C*.

F. Which they contain—*Adj. clause to E*.

G. As the falsehood (is conspicuous)—*Adv. clause to E*.

2. **Depends on.** What kind of verb is this? *Mid. Gram.* § 187. Point out the subject and the object to this verb.

**We must do.** We ought to do. *Mid. Gram.* p. 218, par. 9 (d).

**With whom we are thrown.** Amongst whom we happen to be placed.

3. **Motto.** A short saying used as a guide to conduct.

**Inverted.** Reversed, as when the subject and object to a verb change places.

**Confidence.** Courage.

**To perform it.** Which Infinitive is this?

4. **It is not true.** To what does "it" here refer? *Mid. Gram.* § 151 (c).

**Bought.** Bribed.

**Tempt.** Try, that is, put their honesty to a test; attract.

**Seduce.** Lead astray; lead into sin.

5. **Charity.** Giving help to the needy.

**Should begin.** Ought to begin. "Should" is here used in the sense of duty. *Mid. Gram.* p. 214, par. 3 (c).

6. **Dangerous.** Liable to be misused.

There are three clauses or simple sentences in par. 6. Name them.

**Substitute.** In what mood is this verb? See *Mid. Gram.* § 233 (a).

**Article.** A piece of property of any kind.

7. **In the lurch.** In a state of danger and without help.

**Justify.** Defend.

**Disguise.** Hide by some false colouring or covering.

**Ugliness.** Deformity of appearance ; hence baseness of character.

8. There are six clauses in this paragraph.

A. Since it is not merely hard (for an empty sack to stand upright)—*Adv. clause to A.*

B. But (it is) impossible for an empty sack to stand upright—*Co-ord. to A.*

C. Such a proverb implies—*Principal clause.*

D. That it is impossible for a poor man to be upright or honest—*Noun clause to C.*

E. And thus it makes excuses for dishonesty—*Co-ord. to C.*

F. Where no excuse ought to be admitted—*Adj. clause to E.*

**Excuse.** A plea or defence for some misdeed.

9. The few. Explain this phrase. *Mid. Gram. § 99 (c).*

**Bound.** Bound by a promise, pledged.

**Trouble.** In what mood is this verb? *Mid. Gram. § 233 (a).*

**Pernicious.** Harmful, noxious.

**Hereditary.** Traditional, handed down from father to son.

**Stealing.** Is this a Gerund or a Participle? Is the verb Transitive here or Intransitive? *Mid. Gram. § 180 (a).*

10. Tool. Instrument.

Get all the profit, etc.

A. Get all the profit—*Principal clause.*

B. That you can—*Adj. clause to A.*

C. But use some one else as a tool for the purpose—*Co-ord. to A.*

D. And take care—*Co-ord. to C.*

E. That the injury does not fall on yourself—*Noun-clause to D.*

F. If any one is injured—*Adv. clause to E.*

G. But (that the injury falls) on him—*Co-ord. to E.*

11. Lest you should. *Mid. Gram. § 424, Note.*

**Say or do.** What is the object to these verbs?

**Acted on.** What kind of verb is this? A prepositional verb. See *Mid. Gram. § 187.*

**Public, private.** On which of these two words is the stress or emphasis chiefly laid? *Mid. Gram. § 289 (b).*

## WORDS.

1. **Popular.** People, popularly, popularise, population ; populous.

**Applied.** Apply, application, applicant, applicable.

**Contain.** Content, contentment, contentedly.

2. **Depends.** Depend, dependent, dependant, dependence.

**Practise.** Practice (*noun*), practise (*verb*), practitioner, practical, practically.

**Imitate.** Imitator, imitative, imitation.

3. **Rule.** Rule (*noun*), rule (*verb*), regular, regularly, regulation, regulate.

**Civilised.** Civil, civilly, civilian, civilisation.

**Duty.** Due, debt, duty, dutiful, dutifully.

4. **Price.** Precious, preciously, price.

**True.** Trow, troth, truc, truth, truly.

**Tempt.** Temptation, tempter, temptingly.

5. **Reason.** Reason (*verb* or *noun*), rational, rationally, reasonable.

**Home.** Homely, domestic (Latin form).

7. **Justify.** Just, justly, justice, justify.

8. **Implies.** Imply, implication.

**Poor.** Poorly, poverty, impoverish, impoverishment.

9. **Concealed.** Conceal, concealment.

**Trouble.** Trouble (*noun or verb*), troublesome.

**Hereditary.** Heir, heirloom, hereditary, inherit, inheritance.

**Night.** Nightly, nocturnal (Latin form), benighted.

11. **Agree.** Agreement, agreeable.

**Public.** Publicly, publish, publicity, publication.

**Private.** Privately, privacy.

## 19.—The Loss of the "Royal George."

The *Royal George* was a man-of-war, carrying one hundred guns. On the 29th August 1782, while riding at anchor in port, she suddenly heeled over to one side and sank; and all her crew, consisting of some 800 men, and her admiral, named Kempenfelt (who was quietly writing a letter in his cabin below deck), were drowned. The disaster could hardly have been foreseen. The men on deck had moved many of the guns out of their places, and left them standing loose upon their wheels on the deck, in perfectly calm weather. A land-breeze suddenly sprang up, which caught the sails of the ship and sent the heavy guns suddenly rolling to one side of the vessel. The weight, thus suddenly thrown upon one side of the ship by the guns, sent her heeling over. The ship could not right herself; the water poured in; and every one on board was drowned. Many attempts were made to pull up the vessel, but in vain. Nothing but portions of the wreck were recovered, and these only by means of gunpowder.

1. **Toll.** Ring the bells of churches.

**The brave.** What noun is understood after "brave"? The noun "men."

**No more.** Dead. This adverbial phrase is complement to the verb "are."

**Sunk.** This is an example of an Intransitive verb being used as the Past Participle and placed after the noun which it qualifies. See *Mid. Gram.* § 242 (i). Such a thing rarely occurs except in poetry.

**Fast by.** This is an example in which an adverb (fast) qualifies a preposition (by). See *Mid. Gram.* § 253 (a).

2. **Heel.** Lean to one side. In what mood is this? *Mid. Gram.* § 233 (a).

**Laid her.** A ship is always spoken of as feminine.

3. **Land-breeze.** A breeze coming from the land.

**Shrouds.** The shrouds are the ropes which join the mast-heads to the two sides of the ship. They are intended as a support to the masts.

**Overset.** Capsized, upset.

4. **Is gone.** Point out any difference that may exist between "is gone" and "has gone." *Mid. Gram.* § 206.

**Done.** Finished.

5. **Tempest.** Hurricane, violent storm.

**Sprang no leak.** A leak is a hole or crack through which water can rush into a ship. In the phrase "spring a leak," the verb "spring" (which is properly Intransitive) is used in a causal sense; as in the examples given in *Mid. Gram.* § 185. A leakage in a ship is very like a fountain in the earth: in both cases water springs out. A ship is said to *spring* a leak when it suddenly *causes* a leak to spring, that is, when it suddenly begins to leak.

**Fatal.** Causing the ship to sink.

6. **Held the pen.** This is explained in the summary given above.

7. **Weigh up.** Haul up out of the water. The attempts that were made to pull up the ship are alluded to in the summary.

**Cup.** If the vessel should be hauled up uninjured, that would be a time for rejoicing and passing round the wine-cup; but the wine at such a time would be mingled with the tears that England owes to the dead.

**Owes.** Owes to the brave men who have perished.

**8. Thunder.** That is, the guns or cannon which make the thunder.

**Plough.** The keel of a ship is said to plough the sea, as a plough cuts the earth.

**Main.** Ocean.

**9. Shall plough.** Here "shall" is used instead of "will" in the Third Person Future. Why? Because it was *ruled* by Providence (see *Mid. Gram.* § 207, *b*) that he and his men should perish, although the ship in which they were drowned might perhaps be floated again.

#### WORDS.

**2. Side.** Side (*noun*), side (*verb*), lateral (Latin form).

**3. Complete.** Complete (*verb* or *adjective*), completely, complement.

**5. Fatal.** Fate, fatal, fatally, fatalist.

**9. Victories.** Victor, victory, victorious, victoriously, con-vict' (*verb*), con'-viet (*noun*).

### 20.—The Death of Aurangzeb.

**1. Aurangzeb** was one of the Moghal Emperors of India,—the fifth from Baber, by whom the dynasty was founded. He came to the throne in A.D. 1658.

**Operation.** Movement, action.

**Conceived.** Understood, pictured to the mind.

**Exhausted.** Worn out with fatigue, hunger, and thirst.

**Cattle.** Mention other examples of nouns Singular in form, but Plural in sense. *Mid. Gram.* § 77.

**Dispirited.** Dejected.

**All.** All the troops, camp-followers, etc.

**Marksmen.** Musketeers.

**Charges.** Attacks.

**To complete.** This is the Gerundial Infinitive.

**Dispersion.** Rout.

**The fate.** The event which actually took place. It means that a portion of the army was actually dispersed and destroyed.

**It is a subject.** To what does "it" refer? *Mid. Gram.* § 151 (*c*).

**A.** Such, indeed, was the fate of a portion of the army—*Principal clause*.

**B.** And it is a subject of pious exultation to the Mussulman historians—*Co-ord. to A.*

**C.** That the emperor himself escaped falling into the hands of the enemies—*Noun-clause to B.*

**D.** Whom he had once so much despised—*Adj. clause to C.*

**Exultation.** Delight.

**Falling.** This is a Gerund, the object to the verb "escaped."

**2. Twenty years.** In what case is "years"?

**Before.** What part of speech is this?

**Elated.** Uplifted. Puffed up with success.

**The remains.** All that was left. This is an example of a noun which is always used in the Plural, and has no Singular. See *Mid. Gram.* § 86 (*f*).

**Ruined greatness.** This is an example of the Past Participle of an Intransitive verb. See *Mid. Gram.* § 242 (*b*).

**About to witness.** Explain this construction. See *Mid. Gram.* § 235 (*d*).

**3. Of late.** On this form of adverb see *Mid. Gram.* § 267 (*3*).

**Impaired.** Weakened, enfeebled, changed for the worse.



**Overcame.** Recovered from, conquered.

**Threatened his life.** Almost put an end to his life.

**Sink.** Fail, collapse.

**Accumulated.** Piled together, or collected.

**On reaching.** Is this a Verbal noun or a Verbal adjective?

**He said.** What conjunction is understood after "said"? *Mid. Gram.* § 317.

**That to come.** Show that "that" is here a Demonstrative pronoun, and not a Demonstrative adjective. *Mid. Gram.* § 149 and § 152 (b). The life to come; the future life.

**Haunt him.** Constantly recur to his mind.

**Remorse.** A sense of guilt.

**Monarch.** The sole ruler of a large kingdom.

**Fears.** The meaning is that Aurangzeb suffered more from a sense of *fear* than from a sense of *guilt*. The fear that one of his sons would make him a prisoner in the same way as he himself had made his father a prisoner.

**Meted out.** Measured out.

**4. Having proposed.** What sort of grammatical construction is this? *Mid. Gram.* § 384 (5).

**Common prudence.** Ordinary prudence.

**Required.** Made necessary.

**Crisis.** A juncture of events requiring prompt and decisive action, so as to secure the object desired and avert disaster. Give the Plural form of "crisis." *Mid. Gram.* § 76.

**Interprets them into, etc.** Understands them in the light of a design, etc.

**Entreating.** Earnestly begging for. Is this a Gerund or a Participle?

**Ruining.** Doing incurable injury to.

**Abruptly.** Suddenly.

**Pretext.** Excuse; the alleged but not the real reason.

**Unwholesome.** Injurious to health.

**Was so unwholesome.** Why is "was" here in the Past tense? *Mid. Gram.* § 434.

**Fumes of ambition.** An atmosphere that smells of some ambitious design. "Fumes" literally means the odour that comes out of fermented liquor, as the "fumes of wine."

**Although.** What conjunction is understood after "although"? *Mid. Gram.* § 322.

**Prevailed on.** Induced, persuaded. This is a prepositional verb in the Passive voice.

**Importunity.** Pertinacity in asking for a thing.

**To allow him.** This is the Simple or Noun-Infinitive and stands as complement to the Factitive verb "prevailed on." *Mid. Gram.* § 235 (c).

**To pay.** This is the complement to the Factitive verb "allow."

**His new government.** The government to which he had been newly or lately appointed.

**His finding.** On the use of the Possessive case before a Verbal noun see *Mid. Gram.* § 250.

**Excuse.** Pretext.

**5. Measures.** Plans.

**Completed.** Carried out to the full.

**Sensible.** Conscious. This adjective is the complement to the verb "became." In what other grammatical forms can a complement be expressed? *Mid. Gram.* § 182.

**Became.** Why is this verb in the Past tense? See *Mid. Gram.* § 422, rule 1.

A. In this awful moment he wrote a letter to Prince Azam—*Principal clause.*

B. Or (he) dictated (a letter to Prince Azam)—*Co-ord. to A.*

C. In which his worldly counsels are mixed with broken sentences, giving utterance to the feeling of remorse and

terror—*Adjective clause to A and B.*

*D.* With which his soul was agitated—*Adjective clause to C.*

*E.* And which he closes with a sort of desperate resignation—*Co-ord. to D.*

**Awful.** Solemn; filling the mind with awe.

**Broken sentences.** Incomplete, fragmentary, or unfinished sentences.

**Giving utterance to.** Expressing.

**Agitated.** Disturbed, distracted.

**Desperate resignation.** Hopeless submission to what must come.

**What may.** The verb "come" is the Principal verb to the Auxiliary "may." Whatever fate may befall me.

**Launched.** "To launch" is to move or slide a ship from the land into the water.

**G. Admonition.** Warning, caution.

**That to Azam.** For what noun is the Demonstrative pronoun "that" here used as substitute?

**Habits.** Modes of action, methods.

**Your courtiers.** The men about your person and court.

**However deceitful.** Whatever secret plots they may be forming. These words show what the character of Aurangzeb was. He trusted no one, and suspected that every one around him had some purpose hostile to himself.

**Art.** Cunning, tact.

**Situation.** Position, viz. the near approach of death.

**Breaks out.** Explain the Intransitive use of this verb. *Mid. Gram.* § 180 (b).

**Wherever.** What is the force of "ever"? *Mid. Gram.* § 159 (c).

**Committed.** Been guilty of.

**It was done for you.** This is said by Aurangzeb in defence of himself; but the defence is not sound. He, in fact, did everything for himself, and had his own interests always in view, not those of his son or of any one else.

**His last.** What noun is understood after "last"? How can an Intransitive verb like "breathed" take an object after it? *Mid. Gram.* § 183 (d).

## WORDS.

1. **Operation.** Operate, operative, operation.

**Conceived.** Conceived, conceit, conceited, conception.

**Exhausted.** Exhaust, exhaustion, exhaustive, exhaustingly.

**Confusion.** Confound, confuse, confusion, confusedly.

**Incessant.** Cease, cessation, incessant, incessantly.

**Alarmed.** Alarm (*verb*), alarm (*noun*), alarmingly.

**Expecting.** Expect, expectation, expectant, expectantly.

**Moment.** Momentary, momentous, momentarily.

**Destruction.** Destroy, destructive, destructively.

**Pious.** Piously, piety.

**Exultation.** Exult, exultant, exultantly.

**Enemies.** Inimical.

2. **Received.** Receive, receipt, reception, receptive, receptively.

**Remains.** Remain (*verb*), remains (*noun*), remainder, remnant.

**Ruined.** Ruin (*verb*), ruin (*noun*), ruinous, ruinously.

3. **Health.** Heal, hale, whole, healthy, healthily.

**Gradually.** Grade, gradual, gradually.

**Continued.** Continue, continual, continually, continuous, continuously.

**Appear.** Appearance, apparition, apparent, apparently.

**Public.** Publish, publicly, publication, publicity.

**Attend.** Attention, attentive, attentively, attendant.

**Anxiety.** Anxious, anxiously.

**Letters.** Literate, illiterate.

- Extent.** Extend, extent, extensive, extensively.
- Failure.** Fail, failure, fault, faulty, faultily.
- Imprisoned.** Prison, prisoner, imprison, imprisonment.
- Expresses.** Express, expression, expressive, expressively.
- Action.** Act (*verb* or *noun*), active, agent.
4. **Proposed.** Propose, proposal, proposition.
- Common.** Commoner, community, commonly.
- Prudence.** Prudent, prudential.
- Crisis.** Critical, critic, critically, critique.
- Design.** Design (*verb* or *noun*), designedly.
- Alive.** Life, live; vital (Latin form).
- Exactly.** Exact (*verb*), exact (*adjective*), exactness, exactness.
- Used.** Use (*verb*), use (*noun*), useful, usefully, utilise, utility.
- Prevailed.** Prevalent, prevalence, prevail.
- Importunity.** Importune (*verb*), importunity, importunate, importunately.
- Exertions.** Exert, exertion, exercise.
- Authority.** Author, authorise, authority, authoritative, authoritatively.
- Compel.** Compulsion, compulsory.
- Proceed.** Proceedure, process, proceeding.
5. **Counsel.** Counsel (*verb* or *noun*), counsellor.
- Resignation.** Resign, resigned, resignedly, resignation.
6. **Favourite.** Favour (*noun* or *verb*), favourite, favourable, favourably.
- Admonition.** Admonish, monitor.
- Retained.** Retention, retentive.
- Deceitful.** Deceive, deceit, deceptive, deceptively, deceitful, deceitfully.

**Crimes.** Criminal, criminally.

**Punishment.** Punish, punitive, pain, penal, penalty, impunity.

## 21.—Sermon on the Mount.

**Sermon.** An address on the subject of religion.

1. **Disciples.** Followers, listeners.

**Blessed.** In this and the following sentences, the complement "blessed" is put before, instead of after, its verb. Why? See *Mid. Gram.* § 182, Note 2, and § 409.

**Poor in spirit.** Humble-minded.

**Comforted.** Consolated—in the future life, if not in the present one.

**Meek.** Mild of temper, gentle.

**Inherit.** Become possessors of or heirs to. Those who claim the least shall get the most.

**Persecuted.** Oppressed, ill-treated.

2. **Reville.** Speak evil of, reproach.

**Exceeding glad.** On the irregular use of an adjective like "exceeding" for qualifying another adjective see *Mid. Gram.* § 389.

**Great.** Here, as in the word "blessed" above, the complement is placed first for the sake of emphasis.

**Prophets.** Expounders of God's commands. The word does not merely mean "men who foretell the future."

**The salt of the earth.** Salt is remarkable for its purifying properties. In the same way the disciples of Christ, by their example and teaching, will have a purifying influence upon the rest of mankind.

**Hath lost its savour.** Has lost its purifying properties and wholesome taste.

3. **Bushel.** A vessel having the capacity of a bushel; that is, 8 gallons or 32 quarts.

**Candlestick.** That in which the candle is fixed. It is called "stick."

because this was originally made only of wood.

**Shine.** In what mood is "shine"?

*Mid. Gram.* § 233 (a).

**Glorify.** Praise, extol, honour.

**4. Destroy.** Cancel.

**The law or the prophets.** The "law" means the laws of Moses about rites, ceremonies, etc. The "prophets" means the moral teaching given by the prophets.

**Fulfil.** Complete what in the law and the prophets was left incomplete.

**Till heaven and earth, etc.** So long as heaven and earth last.

**Jot, tittle.** The smallest particle or atom.

**Accomplished.** Fulfilled, completed.

**Whosoever.** Show the force of "ever," "soever." *Mid. Gram.* § 159 (c).

**Teach men so.** Teach men to break it. Parse "so." *Mid. Gram.* § 154.

**Exceed.** Surpass in quality.

**Scribes.** Literally, writers. This was the name given to that class of men who expounded the laws of Moses. They were sometimes called "lawyers."

**Levites.** An inferior order of priests in the ancient Jewish church.

**Pharisees.** This was the name given to a very rigid sect, who followed the ceremonial laws of Moses very closely, but were apt to neglect the moral or natural laws.

**5. In danger of judgment.** In danger of being brought before a judge.

**Raca.** This is a Hebrew word expressing contempt.

**Council.** An assembly of judges, a higher tribunal than that of an individual judge.

**Hell fire.** There was a valley outside Jerusalem in which the bodies of criminals were thrown and burnt, after the criminals had been executed. This dreaded valley was sometimes

spoken of as the place of future punishment reserved for sinners.

**A gift.** A religious offering or gift.

**Hath ought against thee.** Has any wrong to be redressed; any grievance or complaint against thee.

**Go thy way.** What kind of object is "way" to the verb "go"? *Mid. Gram.* § 183 (b).

**Reconciled.** Restored to brotherly love.

**In the way.** The meaning is: if thou and thy adversary are actually on the way to the judge's court, come to terms with him on the road.

**Haply.** By chance, perchance, perhaps.

**Deliver thee.** Put thee in the power of the judge by proving thee to be guilty. In what mood is this verb? *Mid. Gram.* § 226.

**The officer.** The man appointed to carry out the sentence of the judge.

**6. Stumble.** Trip; that is, fall into sin.

**Offend.** Cause to stumble; that is, lead into sin.

**Divorcement.** The cancellation of marriage.

**Saving.** Except.

**7. To them of old time.** To those who lived in former times; that is, the time before Jesus appeared on earth.

**Forswear thyself.** Make a false oath; make an oath and leave it unfulfilled.

**Communication.** Your mode of communicating with other men.

**Yea, yea; nay, nay.** A man who has given his word "yes" or "no" is bound to keep it; and the fact of his having made an oath to keep it will not bind him to his word any closer.

**8. An eye for an eye, etc.** This is the law of retaliation, like for like. But the law announced by Christ is the law of pardon.

**Would go.** May wish to go.

**Coat, cloak.** A cloak is worn outside a coat, and is the larger garment of the two.

**Twain.** Two.

**9. Reward.** What praise or what reward do you deserve?

**Publicans.** These were a very despised class, because, although they were Jews by blood and religion, they collected the Roman taxes from Jews, and this made them very unpopular.

**Salute.** Show respect for.

### WORDS.

**1. Blessed.** Bless (*verb*), blessing (*noun*), blessedness; bliss, blissful.

**Inherit.** Heir, hereditary, inherit, inheritance.

**Righteousness.** Right, rightly, righteous, righteously, righteousness.

**Filled.** Fill, full, fully, fulness, fulfil.

**2. Revile.** Vile (*adjective*), vilely, vilify, re-vile.

**Falsely.** False, falsify, falsehood, falsely.

**Exceeding.** Exceed, excess, excessive, excessively, exceedingly.

**Prophets.** Prophet, prophesy (*verb*), prophecy (*noun*), prophetic.

**3. Light.** Light (*noun*), light (*adjective*), lighten, or enlighten (*verb*).

**4. Destroy.** Destruction, destructive, destructively.

**5. Judgment.** Judge, judicial, judicious, ad-judge, pre-judice.

**6. Heart.** Hearty, cordial (Latin form), dis-hearten.

**Offend.** Offence, offensive, offensively.

**7. Time.** Timely, temporal, tense, temporary, temporarily.

**9. Hate.** Hateful, hatred.

## 22.—Fidelity.

### § 1. THE ARAB AND HIS HORSE.

**1. Caravan.** A company of merchants, pilgrims, or others travelling together with camels over a long tract of country; and especially over a desert. What kind of noun is this? *Mid. Gram.* § 27.

**Gang.** A band of robbers. What kind of noun is this?

**Booty.** Plunder.

**Examining.** Is this a Verbal noun or a Verbal adjective?

**To meet.** Which Infinitive is this?

**2. Overpowered.** Defeated.

**Prisoners.** In what case is this noun? See *Mid. Gram.* § 384 (2).

**3. Its master.** In what case is "master"? *Mid. Gram.* § 386 (6).

**4. Caress.** Pat it or stroke it fondly.

**5. The hollow.** The palm. The noun "part" is understood after "hollow." The adjective is thus used as a noun. *Mid. Gram.* § 128 (3).

**Skim.** Run lightly over the surface.

**Bathe.** On the Intransitive use of this verb see *Mid. Gram.* § 180 (b).

**8. Celebrated.** Extolled, made famous.

**Sagacity.** Cleverness, intelligence.

### WORDS.

**1. Rich.** Riches, richly, en-rich, en-richment.

**Dividing.** Divide, division, dividend, divisor.

**3. Horse.** Equine (Latin form of adjective).

**4. Side.** Lateral (Latin form of adjective), sideways (*adverb*).

**5. Friend.** Friendly, friendship, be-friend, friendliness.

**Tongue.** Lingual (Latin form

of adjective), linguist, language.

6. **Noble.** Nobly, nobleness, noble.

## § 2. IRMA AND THE LION.

1. **Odessa.** A city in Southern Russia, on the northern shore of the Black Sea.

**Equestrian.** Consisting of horsemen.

**Troupe.** A company engaged in making performances or shows in public. What kind of noun is "troupe." *Mid. Gram.* § 37. It is sounded as "troop."

**Romantic.** Pertaining to romance. A tale relating to some very unusual or striking adventure is said to be romantic.

**Quiet.** Retiring, modest, the opposite to bold.

**Superior to.** On the use of "to" after Latin Comparatives see *Mid. Gram.* § 127.

**Ordinary run.** Average character.

**Figure.** Show themselves before the public.

**Acrobats.** Persons who perform feats in the air, as walking on ropes, etc.

**Circuses.** A circular enclosed space for the sake of public performances is called a circus.

**Graceful.** Graceful in figure, well shaped.

**Fatal.** Disastrous, ruinous.

2. **Leo and Nero.** In what case are these nouns and why? *Mid. Gram.* § 384 (2).

**A year before.** Is "before" here an adverb, or a conjunction, or a preposition?

**Sullen.** Morose, ill-tempered, sulky.

**Vicious.** Malignant, ready at any time to do any one an injury.

**To keep it.** Which Infinitive is this?

**Tractable.** Manageable. This is the complement to the verb "keep."

**Arena.** The floor of the circus or other enclosed place, in which the performances are held.

3. **A.** I had not been long in this company—*Prin. clause.*

**B.** Before I perceived—*Adjective clause to A.*

**C.** That Irma had two admirers in the circus troupe—*Noun-clause to B.*

**D.** One of whom was a fine manly young Frenchman, a bare-back rider professionally—*Co-ord. to C.*

**E.** And the other (was) a boorish Russian with a villainous cast about the eyes—*Co-ord. to D.*

**F.** That made him look the perfection of ugliness—*Adjective clause to E.*

**Long.** What part of speech is "long" here?

**Circus troupe.** Parse "circus." *Mid. Gram.* § 388.

**Rider.** In what case is this noun and why? See *Mid. Gram.* § 384 (3).

**Bare-back.** This means that the horse on which he rode was bare-backed, that is, not furnished with a saddle.

**Boorish.** Ill-mannered, ill-bred.

**Cast.** Direction of the eye.

**Perfection of ugliness.** A perfect type or picture of ugliness.

**Say.** In what mood is this verb? *Mid. Gram.* § 233 (a).

**Favoured.** Selected, preferred.

**Suitor.** One who pays his addresses to a young woman, with a view to marriage.

**Uneasiness.** Anxiety, care, disturbance of mind.

**Open.** Undisguised, unreserved, unconcealed.

**Partiality.** Preference.

**Burly.** Big, clumsily shaped.

**Confidant.** A person to whom a secret is entrusted. It is sounded "con'-fi-dant'."

4. **One day.** In what case is "day"?

**Perform.** Go through the public performance.

**Better.** In a better state of health.

**Avenues.** An avenue is a road with a line of trees on each side.

**Refreshment.** Food or drink.

**Deserted.** Empty of visitors.

**Drunk.** Intoxicated.

**Smoked on.** Continued to smoke. When "on" is placed after a verb it generally implies that the action is continued. Thus "he went on=he continued going"; "he slept on=he continued sleeping."

5. **Moody.** Sulky or sullen. Complement to the verb "sat."

**Revenged us.** Taken vengeance for us.

**With drunken gravity.** With a solemn, but tipsy air. Show the difference in use between "drunken" and "drunk." *Mid. Gram.* p. 208.

**Relieved.** Relieved or released from anxiety about Irma.

**Reassured.** Restored to the same assurance or confidence as before.

6. **Talking.** Is this a Gerund or a Participle? What is the object to the verb "resumed"? "Resumed" means recommenced, began again.

**Spurn.** Reject with contempt.

**Shall not win.** Observe here the force of "shall." The Russian speaks of the future as if it were a command or order from himself that Henri shall not win the hand of Irma. See *Mid. Gram.* § 207 (b).

**Told.** What is the object or objects to this verb? *Mid. Gram.* § 177.

**Diabolical.** Devilish, fiendish.

**Conceived.** Imagined, thought of.

**A few minutes—mistress.**

**A.** A few minutes before he came

away from the circus—*Adv. clause to B.*

**B.** He had given the lion Nero a piece of meat steeped in a drug—*Principal clause.*

**C.** That would most certainly irritate the savage beast—*Adv. clause to B.*

**D.** And (that would) madden the beast just at the very time —*Co-ord. to C.*

**E.** When it would be in the circle with its mistress — *Adv. clause to D.*

**Steeped.** Soaked, saturated.

**Irritate.** Excite to anger.

7. **I turned.** What kind of verb is "turned" here? *Mid. Gram.* § 180 (b).

After he had told. What part of speech is "after" here?

**Realised.** Imagined with as much reality as if I actually saw it.

**Glanced.** Took a hasty look.

**In time to warn.** Which Infinitive is this?

**Trusting.** Hoping with some degree of confidence. What conjunction is understood after "trusting." *Mid. Gram.* § 317.

**As hard.** As fast, as rapidly.

**Were up.** Had been raised. The adverb "up" is here the complement to the verb "were." See *Mid. Gram.* § 270 (b).

**Naturally.** As might be expected.

**Stalwart.** Strong, muscular.

**Understood.** The Englishman could not speak the Russian language, and hence he could not make himself understood.

8. **Above the strains.** Exceeding the martial strains in distinctness of sound.

**Martial.** Warlike; hence, stirring, spirited.

**The band.** What kind of noun is this? This word is commonly used for a company of musicians.

**Commotion.** Disturbance.

**Released me.** Let me go. Up till now they had been holding him back.

**Amphitheatre.** An enclosed space half circular or nearly circular in shape. It is circular on all sides but one. On the prefix "amphi" see *Mid. Gram.* p. 196.

**We saw.** What is the object to the verb "saw"? *Mid. Gram.* § 179 and § 320.

**Gesticulating.** Throwing their arms into the air, and moving their bodies at random, without any definite purpose.

**All around.** Here the adverb "all" (*Mid. Gram.* p. 141) qualifies the preposition "around," as is explained in § 253 (a).

**Barred ring.** A ring enclosed with bars.

**Prostrate.** Overthrown and not able to rise.

**Paralysed.** Unable to act, as if struck by paralysis.

**Irons.** Iron bars. A Material noun used as a Common noun.

**Opposite to.** Point out the object to the preposition "to." *Mid. Gram.* § 273 and § 316 (c).

**To my surprise, etc.** The preposition "to" is here used in the sense of cause leading to some effect. The effect of what he saw was "surprise and delight." *Mid. Gram.* § 276 (b).

**Majestic.** Stately.

**Preparing.** Show how this Transitive verb can be used Intransitively. See *Mid. Gram.* § 180 (b).

**Dashed.** How has this become Intransitive?

**Mortal conflict.** Conflict in which the one or the other must be killed.

**With each other.** The construction is, "while they were thus engaged—each was engaged,—with the other." Thus "each" is in apposition to "they." What kind of adjective is "each"? *Mid. Gram.* § 110.

**Audience.** The visitors who had come to hear and see.

**10. Fortunately.** This adverb qualifies no one word in particular, but the whole sentence. See *Mid. Gram.* § 254 and § 414 (a).

**Surgeon.** A doctor who attends to wounds; "physician" is a doctor who gives medicines.

**At hand.** Near, on the spot, in the amphitheatre.

**Relieved.** Set free from suspense.

**Assurance.** A statement made with confidence or emphasis.

**Had inflicted.** What is the object to this verb? *Mid. Gram.* § 320.

*Analysis of par. 10 into clauses:—*

A. Fortunately a surgeon was at hand—*Principal clause.*

B. And before we left the circus—*Adverb clause to C.*

C. We were all greatly relieved by his assurance—*Co-ord. to A.*

D. That the wounds were not of a serious nature—*Noun-clause to C.*

E. (Which) the maddened animal had inflicted — *Adjective clause to D.*

**11. Engagement.** Business which engages a man's time at a certain place and hour.

**Henri and Irma's.** Here observe the possessive case-ending is added only to the last of the two nouns. *Mid. Gram.* § 385 (b).

**The day after.** Parse "after."

**Siberia.** The northern part of Asia to which convicts are sent by the Russian Government.

**Having undergone.** Is this a Verbal noun or a Verbal adjective?

**Tempered.** Qualified, modified.

**Graceful.** Appropriate.

**Courier.** Runner, messenger.

**Decision.** The decision or verdict given against Orloff.

**Diamond.** Parse this word. *Mid. Gram.* § 388.

**Bracelet.** An ornament worn round the wrist.



## WORDS.

1. **Attached.** Attached, attachment.  
**Horse.** Equine (Latin form), equestrian.  
**Circumstance.** Circumstantial, circumstantially.  
**Company.** Ac-company (*verb*), companion, companionable.  
**Woman.** Womanly, feminine (Latin form).  
**Remarkably.** Remark (*verb* or *noun*), remarkable, remarkably.  
**Graceful.** Grace (*verb* or *noun*), graceful, gracefully.  
**Maintained.** Maintain, maintenance.  
**Respect.** Respect (*verb* or *noun*), respectable, respectably; respective, respectively.  
**Public.** Publish, publicly, publican, publicity, publication.  
**Reputation.** Repute (*noun* or *verb*), reputation, dis-reputable.
2. **Named.** Name (*noun* or *verb*), nominal, nominally, nominate, nominative.  
**Dangerous.** Danger, en-danger, dangerous, dangerously.  
**Excessive.** Exceed, exceeding, exceedingly, excess, excessive, excessively.  
**Noble.** Nobly, nobleness, en-noble.  
**Vicious.** Vice, vicious, viciously, vitiate.  
**Brute.** Brutish, brutal, brutalise.  
**Incessant.** Cease, cessation, unceasing, un-cessingly, incessant, incessantly.  
**Watchfulness.** Wake, wakeful; watch, watchful, watchfully.
3. **Perceived.** Perceive, perception, perceptible, perceptibly.  
**Admirers.** Admire, admiration, admirable, admirably.  
**Professionally.** Profess, professor, professedly, profession, professional, professionally.  
**Villainous.** Villain, villainy, villainous, villainously.

- Favoured.** Favour, favourite, favourable, favourably.  
**Certainly.** Certain, certainty, ascertain.  
**Confidant.** Confide, confidant (*noun*), confident (*adj.*), confidence, confidential, confidentially.  
**Assured.** Assure, assuredly, assurance.
1. **Perform.** Performer, performance.  
**Night.** Nightly, nocturnal (Latin form), be-nighted.  
**Deserted.** De-sert' (*verb*), desert (*noun*), desertion.
  5. **Revenged.** Vengeance, vindictive, vindictively, re-venge.  
**Gravity.** Grave, gravely, gravity; grief, grieve, grievous, grievously; ag-gravate.  
**Injured.** Injure, injury, injurious, injuriously.
  6. **Diabolical.** Devil, devilish, diabolical.  
**Conceived.** Conceive, conception, conceit, conceited, conceitedly.  
**Madden.** Mad, madness, madly, madden.  
**Beast.** Beastly, bestial, bestialise.
  7. **Realised.** Real, really, reality, realise.
  - Appearance.** Appear, apparent, apparently, apparition.
  8. **Terrible.** Terror, terrify, terrible, terribly.  
**Description.** Describe, description, descriptive, descriptively.
  9. **People.** Popular, popularly, populate, populous, population.
  - Paralysed.** Paralyse, paralysis, paralytic.
  - Delight.** Delight (*verb* or *noun*), delightful, delicious.
  - Centre.** Central, centrally, centralise; ec-centric.
  - Form.** Formal, formally, formality.

**Excited.** Excite, excitement, excited, excitedly.

10. **Relieved.** Relief.

11. **Imperial.** Empire, emperor, imperial, imperious.

**Despotism.** Despot, despotie, despotism.

**Approved.** Approval, approbation.

**Courier.** Course, current, currently, currency.

**Decision.** Decide, decisive, decisively, decision.

### § 3. THE DOG AND ITS MASTER.

The event here related occurred on Mount Helvellyn, a mountain in Wales.

A shepherd on his way along a solitary tract, far away from human habitations, is suddenly struck with the sound of a dog's bark, which had an unusual tone. Presently he sees the dog itself, which leads him to a huge cavern in the side of the mountain, that was protected by a deep precipice in front. Looking down into the cavern he sees the skeleton of a man lying there. He then suddenly remembers that three months before a man had passed that way with his dog; and it was now clear that this man had missed his footing and fallen down the precipice into the cavern below. The most astonishing thing in connection with this event was the fidelity of the dog, which for no less than three months had elung to the spot where the body of its dead master lay. How it was fed all that time, God only knows.

1. **Halts.** Stops, stands still.

**At distance.** In the distance.

**Discern.** Detect, distinguish. In what mood is this verb? *Mid. Gram.* § 233 (b).

**Can.** Here the "he" has been omitted.

**Stirring.** Movement of some kind or other.

**Brake.** A thicket; a place overgrown with bushes and shrubs.

**Fern.** A plant with feather-like leaves.

**Glancing.** Casting its eyes rapidly to this side and that.

**Covert.** Shelter.

2. **Mountain.** Parse this. *Mid. Gram.* § 388.

**Breed.** Stock, species, kind.

**In sight.** Visible. This prepositional phrase is the complement to the verb "is." *Mid. Gram.* § 182.

**Hollow.** Hollow place, glen, ravine. Here an adjective is used as a noun.

**Height.** High place, the opposite to glen or hollow.

**Creature.** This word here implies pity. What is the poor thing doing here?

3. **Cove.** A hollow and sheltered place; a cavern.

**Precipice.** Perpendicular or almost perpendicular bank.

**Silent.** Because it was shielded from all sound by the precipice in front.

**Tarn.** A piece of standing water; a pool.

**Bosom.** The interior parts.

**Helvellyn.** The name of a Welsh mountain.

4. **Boding thoughts.** Gloomy apprehensions; the expectation of seeing something sad.

**A while.** For a short time.

**As he may.** This is grammatically incorrect; and in prose it would have been written "as he might." See *Mid. Gram.* § 422, rule 1.

**Appalled.** Dismayed, horrified.

**To learn the history.** To see if he could find out what had happened. Which Infinitive is this?

5. **Abrupt.** Precipitous.

**Had fallen.** Give the causal form of this verb. *Mid. Gram.* § 186.

**Place of fear.** Dangerous place, place to be feared and avoided.

It breaks. It dawns, like the sun at break of day. Everything connected with the matter dawned upon his mind. What kind of Present tense is this? *Mid. Gram.* § 212.

Recalled. Recollected.

6. A wonder. A marvellous or wonderful fact.

For whose sake. For the sake of which. In prose it would not have been written "for whose sake." "Whose" is generally used when some person or animal is the antecedent, but "wonder" is not a person or animal. *Mid. Gram.* §§ 63, 64.

Lamentable. Sad.

Lasting. Perpetual, imperishable.

Monument of words. Monuments are generally made of stone; but here the monument is made of the words given by the poet. "Monument" is here in the Objective case after "merits."

Merits well. Well deserves. "This marvellous event well deserves a lasting monument of words."

Hovering. Moving about here and there.

7. How nourished, etc. How it was nourished.

Great. This qualifies the noun "strength."

Above all, etc. Surpassing all human calculation.

A. How it was nourished here through such long time—  
*Noun-clause to B.*

B. He knows—*Principal clause.*

C. Who gave that love sublime—  
*Adj. clause to B.*

D. And gave that great strength of feeling above all human estimate—*Co-ord. to C.*

#### WORDS.

1. Dog. Dog (*noun and verb*), canine (*Latin form*).

Fox. Vulpine (*Latin form*).

Eye. Ocular (*Latin form*).

Discern. Discreet, discretion, discernment, discreetly.

2. Creature. Create, creation, creature, creator.

3. Recess. Recede, recess.

Remote. Remove, removal. remote, remotely.

5. Perilous. Peril, perilous, perilously, im-peril.

Mind. Mental (*Latin form*), mentally, re-mind.

6. Lamentable. Lament (*noun or verb*), lamentation, lamentable, lamentably.

Merits. Merit (*noun or verb*), meritorious.

Repeating. Repeat, repeatedly, repetition.

7. Nourished. Nourish, nurse, nourishment, nutriment, nutritious.

Estimate. Estimate (*noun or verb*), esteem, estimation.

Human. Man, human (*Latin form*), humanity, humane.

#### 23.—Salt.

1. Salt, earth, water. What kinds of nouns are these? *Mid. Gram.* § 40.

Salt-cellar. A vessel for holding salt.

2. Profitably. So as to bring a profit which will be worth the labour.

Grouped. Classified, collected.

Volcanoes. Mountains that send out flames and melted rock from their tops.

5. A few. Show the difference between "a few" and "few." *Mid. Gram.* § 99.

6. Eruption. The emission of flame and melted rocks. Literally "bursting out."

Mouth. In what case is "mouth" and why?

8. Absorbed. Drained away, swallowed up.

9. Sediment. That which settles

at the bottom, after all the water has disappeared.

11. **Trouble.** In what case is this noun? *Mid. Gram.* § 386 (5).

12. **Industry.** Industrial occupation. What is the difference between "industry" and "an industry"? The former is an Abstract noun, industry in general; the latter is a Common noun, some particular branch of industry. Here "industry" is a Common noun.

14. **Breaks down.** Collapses, falls to a state of disorder.

15. **Fodder.** Food in the shape of leaves or grass.

**Distance.** In what case is this noun?

16. **Cured.** Seasoned.

**Putrid.** Unfit for food.

**Infused.** Instilled, introduced.

18. **Contracts.** Written agreements.

**Tray.** A flat wooden vessel which is carried by hand from one person to another.

#### WORDS.

1. **Bodies.** Body, bodily, corporal (Latin form), em-body.

**Weights.** Weigh, weight, weighty.

2. **Profitably.** Profit (noun or verb), profitable, profitably.

**Land.** Terrestrial (Latin form).

**Water.** Watery, aqueous or aquatic (Latin form).

3. **Solid.** Solidly, solidity, solidify.

**Extent.** Extend, extent, extension, extensive, extensively.

**Equal.** Equally, equality, equalise.

**Produced.** Pro-duce' (verb), prod'-uce (noun), prod'-uct, pro-duction, productive, productively.

4. **Depth.** Deep, deeply, depth, deepen.

**Many.** Multitude, manifold.

7. **Process.** Pro'-cess (noun), proceed' (verb), procedure, proceeding.

8. **Sun.** Solar (Latin form).

**Minute.** Mi-nute' (very small), min'-ute (a moment of time), diminish.

**Part.** Part (noun or verb), partly, partial, partially, depart.

9. **Exposed.** Expose, exposure, exposition.

**Liquid.** Liquidly, liquor, liquefy.

10. **Example.** Exemplary, exemplify, sample.

11. **Unpleasant.** Please, pleasure, pleasant, pleasantly.

12. **Surface.** Superficial, superficially.

**Abundantly.** Abound, abundant, abundance, abundantly.

13. **Number.** Numeral, enumerate.

14. **Healthy.** Heal, health, healthy; hale; whole.

15. **Renewed.** Renew, renewal, renovate.

17. **Fertile.** Fertility, fertilise.

18. **Contracts.** Con'-tract (noun), con-tract' (verb).

## 24.—The Spider and the Fly.

### SUMMARY.

This is a fable told in verse, a spider and a fly being made to talk to each other, as men do. The fly, after resisting every offer which the spider could make to her, yields at last to flattery, and is caught and devoured.

The spider first invites her into his parlour, where he has many curious things to show her (stanza 1); then begs her to go upstairs, and lie down and rest on the comfortable bed prepared for her (stanza 2); then invites her to the pantry, where she will find many nice things to eat (stanza 3).

Finding that all these temptations

**3. Suppressing.** Putting down, subduing. Is this a Verbal noun or a Verbal adjective?

**Tumult.** Popular outbreak or disturbance.

**Provoked.** Enraged, provoked to anger.

**To find.** Which Infinitive is this, and what is the meaning of it here? *Mid. Gram.* § 236 (a) (*Cause*). Point out the object to the verb "find."

**Diminish.** Become less. On the Intransitive use of the Transitive verbs see *Mid. Gram.* § 180 (b).

A. Nádír Sháh at first applied his whole attention to suppressing the tumult—*Principal clause*.

B. And though (he was) provoked to find—*Adverb clause to F.*

C. That it continued during the whole night—*Noun-clause to B.*

D. And seemed to increase rather—*Co-ord. to C.*

E. Than (it seemed) to diminish—*Adverb clause to D.*

F. He mounted his horse at day-break in the hope—*Co-ord. to A.*

G. That his presence would restore quiet.—*Noun-clause to F.*

**Firearms.** Guns, pistols.

**Dead bodies.** In what case is "bodies," and why? *Mid. Gram.* § 381 (2).

**Gave away.** Yielded.

**Horrors.** Horrible deeds, atrocities.

**4. Rapine.** Plunder.

**Satiated.** Satisfied to the full.

**Carnage.** Slaughter, bloodshed, massacre.

**Prevailed on.** Persuaded. Show how an Intransitive verb like "prevail" can be made Transitive. *Mid. Gram.* § 187.

**Infinite.** Very great, unbounded. The promptness with which the

order for stopping the massacre was obeyed was very creditable to the discipline of the army.

**5. Tragedy.** Mournful occurrence.

**Contributions.** The sums of money, etc., to be contributed by the different inhabitants.

**Plunder.** Exactions, rapine.

**Committed.** Handed over, entrusted.

**Proceedings.** Doings, actions.

**6. Imperial.** Belonging to the emperor.

**Peacock throne.** This throne was made by the former emperor named Shah Jahán, and was called the "peacock throne," because at the back of it there was a kind of screen spread out like the tail of a peacock, inlaid with rubies, sapphires, diamonds, etc., in such a way as to look like the colours of a peacock's tail.

**The whole effects.** All the personal property.

**The rest.** The remaining nobles.

**Sacrifice.** Give up.

**Ransom.** That which is paid for buying off some person or thing.

**Inferior.** Of lower rank than the nobles.

**Constrained.** Forced, compelled.

**Disclose.** Make known without any reserve or concealment.

**Extort.** Enforce payment of.

**Received.** What is the object to this verb? *Mid. Gram.* § 179 and § 320.

**Usage.** Treatment.

**Destroyed themselves.** Put an end to their lives; committed suicide.

**Affliction.** Misery, suffering.

**7. Levied on.** Exacted from.

**Exhausted.** Emptied out to the full.

**Making.** Parse this word.

**West of the Indus.** In what case is "west"?

**Ceded.** Given over.

**Timur.** The great Moghal or Turk

who invaded India in A.D. 1398. Baber, who founded the Moghal dynasty, was his sixth descendant.

**Reseated.** Re-installed, re-placed.

**Invested him.** Formally adorned or clothed him.

**Ornaments of the diadem.** Badges of royalty. "Diadem" means crown.

**Implicitly.** Entirely, without any defect or reservation.

**Enjoined.** Ordered.

**8. Computation.** Calculation, reckoning.

**Plate.** Articles for use or ornament made of gold or silver.

**Stuffs.** Cloth or silken goods.

**Artisans.** Mechanics, skilled workmen.

**Exile.** Banishment.

**Painful recollection.** Sad remembrance.

#### WORDS.

1. **Residence.** Reside, resident.  
**Royal.** Reign, regal, royal, royally.
2. **Succeed.** Success, successful, successfully, successor.  
**Intrusion.** Intrude, intrusion, intrusive, intrusively.  
**Hatred.** Hate, hatred, hateful, hatefully.  
**Popular.** People, popular, popularly, populate, population.
3. **Applied.** Apply, applicant, application.  
**Attention.** Attend, attention, attentive, attentively.  
**Tumult.** Tumultuous, tumultuously.  
**Provoked.** Provoke, provokingly, provocation.  
**Whole.** Wholly, total (Latin form), wholesome.  
**Night.** Nightly, nocturnal (Latin form).  
**Increase.** In-crease' (*verb*), in-crease (*noun*), increasingly.  
**Diminish.** Diminution, min-ute'

(*adjective*), minutely, min-ute (*noun*).

**Horse.** Equine (Latin form), equestrian.

**Hope.** Hope (*noun* or *verb*), hopeful, hopefully.

**Quiet.** Quiet (*noun*), quiet (*adjective*), quiet (*verb*), quietly.

**Eyes.** Ocular (Latin form).

**Bodies.** Bodily, corporeal (Latin form), em-body.

**Assailed.** Assail, assault, assailant.

**Side.** Lateral (Latin form), sideways (*adverb*).

4. **Slaughter.** Slay, slaughter.

**Horrors.** Horrible, horribly, horrify.

**Rapine.** Rapine, ravenous, rapture, rapturous, rapturously.

**Vengeance.** Vindictive, vengeful, re-vengeful, revenge (*noun* or *verb*).

**Destruction.** Destroy, destructive, destructively, destruction.

**Satiated.** Sate, satisfy, satisfaction, satisfactory.

**Prevailed.** Prevalent, prevalence.

**Discipline.** Disciple.

**Credit.** Creed, credence, credit (*noun* or *verb*), creditable, creditably.

**Obeeyed.** Obey, obeisance, obedience, obedient, obediently.

5. **En-rich.** Rich, richly, riches, enrich.

**Adviser.** Advise (*verb*), advice (*noun*), adviser, advisedly, advisable.

**Exaction.** Exact (*verb* or *adjective*), exaction.

**Violence.** Violent, violently, violate.

6. **Possession.** Possess, possessor, possession, possessive.

**Seized.** Seize, seizure.

**Effects.** Effect (*noun* or *verb*), effectual, effectually, effective, effectively.

**Compelled.** Compel, compulsory, compulsion.

**Property.** Proper, properly, appropriate, propriety.

**Usage.** Use (*noun*), use (*verb*), usage, useful, usefully; utilise.

**Received.** Receipt, receptive, reception.

**Disgrace.** Disgraced (*noun* or *verb*), disgraceful, disgracefully.

7. **Convinced.** Conviction, convict (*noun*), convict' (*verb*).

**Invested.** Invest, investiture, investment.

**Enjoined.** Enjoin, injunction.

8. **Money.** Pecuniary (*Latin form*).

**Furniture.** Furnish.

**Elephants.** Elephantine.

**Artisans.** Artists, art, artistic; artistically.

**Homes.** Homely, domestic (*Latin form*).

## 26.—Belshazzar's Feast.

### § 1.—IN PROSE.

1. **Belshazzar.** He was the last king of Babylon. The banquet here described was not finished before Cyrus the Great, the king of the Medes and Persians, captured the city, and put Belshazzar to death.

**Nebuchadnezzar.** He was the father or the grandfather of the last king. He had taken Jerusalem, the capital city of the Jews, and plundered the Jewish temple of its gold and silver ornaments. These he carried off to his own capital Babylon. Belshazzar profaned these vessels by using them at a banquet.

2. **Wrote.** This Transitive verb is here used Intransitively, because no object is thought of. *Mid. Gram.* § 180 (a).

4. **Enchanters.** Magicians, men who used charms or enchantments.

**Chaldeans.** Astrologers; they are here called by the name of Chaldeans, because this tribe was noted for its study of the stars.

**Soothsayers.** Men who interpreted or pretended to interpret signs and wonders.

**Show.** Point out the object or objects to this verb. *Mid. Gram.* § 177.

**Interpretation.** Meaning.

6. **The queen.** The mother of Belshazzar, the king.

**Interpreting.** The power of interpreting.

**Dissolving.** Clearing up.

7. **Children of the captivity.** The Jews who had been taken captive to Babylon by Nebuchadnezzar.

8. **Peoples.** This means the same as "nations." But "people" is never used in the plural number, except in the sense of "nation."

**And languages.** "Language" is here used as a synonym for "nation," because one nation is generally distinguished from another by the language that it speaks.

**Whom he would.** The verb "kill" is understood after "would." "Would" here is not Subjunctive, but signifies "desired" or "wished."

**Deposed.** This word is especially used for the removal of a king from his throne.

**He knew.** Point out the object or objects after this verb. *Mid. Gram.* § 24 (f) and § 316 (b).

**He setteth up.** What is the object to this verb?

**He will.** The Infinitive verb "set up" is understood after this verb. "Will" is here in the Subjunctive mood, to express a doubt. "He setteth up any man whom he may will or desire to set up." *Mid. Gram.* § 230 (4).

**Glorified.** Honoured, worshipped.

9. **Made proclamation.** Published a royal edict or notice.

### WORDS.

1. **Servants.** Serve, servant, service, servile.

- Father.** Fatherly, paternal (Latin form).
3. **Thoughts.** Think, thoughts, thoughtful, thoughtfully.
6. **Gods.** Godly, divine (Latin form), **King.** Kingdom, kingship, kingly, regal or royal (Latin form).
7. **Captivity.** Captive, capture, captivate.
- Day.** Daily, diurnal (Latin form); hence, journal.
8. **Hardened.** Hard, hardly, hardship, hardness, hardened.
- Heart.** Hearty, cordial (Latin form), heartily, dishearten.
- Humbled.** Humble (*verb* or *adjective*), humbly, humility, humiliate, humiliation.
- Inscribed.** Inscribe, inscription, scribe (*noun*).

## § 2.—IN VERSE.

1. **Satrap.** The governors of provinces; an Eastern term.
- Thronged.** Filled the hall with their presence.
- Divine.** Sacred.
- Jehovah's vessels.** The vessels used in Jehovah's temple at Jerusalem. Jehovah was the Jewish name for the Supreme Deity.
- Heathen's.** A worshipper of false gods.
2. **The fingers of a hand, etc.** Hence it has become a proverb to say "the handwriting is gone out against the wall," whenever the speaker wishes to say that something will certainly happen.
- As if on sand.** As (he would write) if (he were writing) on sand.
- Wand.** A short stick; especially the rod used by a magician when he foretells something. In what case is "wand"? *Mid. Gram.* § 386 (6).
- Traced them.** Marked them out.
3. **Shook.** On the Intransitive use of this verb see *Mid. Gram.* § 180 (b).

- Bade.** Bade (his guests and courtiers) rejoice no more.
- All bloodless.** Parse "all." *Mid. Gram.* p. 141 (*Adverb*).
- Waxed.** Became.
- Lore.** Learning, wisdom.
- Appear.** Be brought into my presence.
- Expound.** Explain, interpret.
- Mar.** Disturb.
4. **Seers.** Soothsayers, sages, wise men.
- Here.** In this case, on this occasion.
- Untold.** Uninterpreted, not expounded.
- Awful.** Inspiring awe or fear.
- Babel's.** Babylon's.
- Deep.** Skilful, clever.
- Sage.** Wise.
5. **Writing's truth.** The truth disclosed by the writing. The Possessive case could not be used with such a noun as "writing," except in poetry. In prose it would be considered wrong. *Mid. Gram.* §§ 63, 64.
- In view.** Clear, distinct.
6. **Light.** This means that his weight was light in the balance.
- Shroud.** Burial-sheet.
- Canopy.** An ornamental screen or cloth thrown over the head of a prince. Henceforth Belshazzar's canopy will be the stone that marks his burial-place.

## WORDS.

2. **Solitary.** Sole, solcely, solitude, solitary, desolate.
3. **Rejoice.** Joy, joyful, joyfully, re-joice.
- Tremulous.** Tremble, tremor, tremulous, tremulously.
- Lore.** Learn, learning, learned, learnedly.
- Expound.** Exposition, expounder.
- Mirth.** Merry, merrily.
5. **Truth.** Trow, true, truth, truthfully, truthfully.



**Prophecy.** Prophet, prophecy (*verb*), prophecy (*noun*), prophetic, prophetically.

## 27.—The Elephant.

### § 1. GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

1. **That lives.** Why is "that" a very appropriate form of the Relative pronoun in this place? See *Mid. Gram.* § 164.

**Species.** Kinds. On the plural form of this noun see *Mid. Gram.* § 76.

2 (a). **In that of Africa.** Parse "that." *Mid. Gram.* § 152 (b).

**Much below.** Here the adverb "much" qualifies the preposition "below." *Mid. Gram.* § 253 (a).

(b). **Dull gray.** Here the adjective "dull" qualifies the adjective "gray." Adjectives are sometimes thus used to qualify each other.

**Brighter.** Less dull.

(c). **Backbone.** Spine.

**Saddle-shaped.** Having the shape of a saddle. On this form of adjective see *Mid. Gram.* § 243.

**Something like.** To some extent or rather like. Parse "something."

**Like that of a horse.** What part of speech and in what case is "that"? *Mid. Gram.* § 152 (b) and § 386 (6).

(e). **Than those.** What part of speech is "those"?

3. **Average.** Ordinary, usual—whatever remains after the extremes have been deducted.

A. This error has arisen from the fact—*Principal clause.*

B. That the eye is deceived on beholding this huge beast—*Noun-clause to A.*

C. And that the height appears to be much greater—*Co-ord. to B.*

D. Than it is (great)—*Adverb clause to C.*

4. **Conspicuous.** Remarkable, striking: anything that first strikes the eye of the beholder is said to be "conspicuous."

**Section.** A subdivision or part of a chapter.

**Each tusk, etc.** In what case is "tusk"? *Mid. Gram.* § 384 (5).

**Almost in.** Here the adverb "almost" qualifies the preposition "in," or the phrase "in a line."

**Weights, etc.** This is an Intransitive verb of Incomplete Predication. Point out its complement. *Mid. Gram.* § 386 (5).

**Sells.** This is a Transitive verb in the Active voice, but used in a Passive sense. See *Mid. Gram.* § 195 (a).

5. **Quick-sighted.** On the form of this adjective see previous note on "saddle-shaped," in par. 1.

**Detects.** Discovers, perceives.

**Learns.** Point out the object to this verb.

**Move in step.** How has "move" become Intransitive?

6. **Support.** Sustain, hold up.

**Hough.** This is sounded as *hock*.

8. **To feel the sun.** To suffer from the heat of the sun.

**Oxen do.** On this use of "do" see *Mid. Gram.* p. 216, par. 5 (c).

9. **Tamed.** Domesticated and trained to work.

**Where it fetches.** Is "where" used here in a Continuative or a Restrictive sense? See *Mid. Gram.* § 308.

**Whose.** Is this Restrictive or Continuative? On the various senses of "who" see *Mid. Gram.* § 163.

10. **Pitfall.** This is the name given to the trap described in the next sentence:—A pit specially dug for some animal to fall into.

**Attractive baits.** Any kind of

food which is used to entice or lead an animal into a trap is called a bait.

**Transfixed.** Pierced through the middle of the body.

**Miserable death.** What sort of object is "death"? See *Mid. Gram.* § 183 (a).

**11. Caught alive.** On this form of adverb see *Mid. Gram.* § 267 (4). The adverb "alive" is here adverbial adjunct to the verb "caught." Point out the various grammatical forms in which an Adverbial adjunct can be expressed? *Mid. Gram.* § 306.

**Capacity.** Any kind of work for which a man or animal can be employed.

**12. Astride.** This is here a preposition having "neck" for its object. It is often used as an adverb, and is formed in the way shown in *Mid. Gram.* § 267 (4). Astride = in a striding posture.

**Goad.** A spiked instrument used for pricking an animal.

**13. Albino.** This is sounded *al-bee-no*. This word denotes a kind of disease (very common amongst men in India), which gives an unhealthy whiteness to the skin and a pinkish-yellow colour to the eyes.

**Troughs.** A trough (sounded *tröf*) is a long open vessel, standing two or three feet above the ground, out of which animals feed themselves.

**To eat from.** "To eat" is properly a Transitive verb; but here it is used in a very general sense so as to become Intransitive. *Mid. Gram.* § 180 (a). On the necessity of putting "from" after the Intransitive verb "eat" see § 236 (b), *Note*.

## § 2. THE TRUNK OF THE ELEPHANT.

**1. To enable them, etc.** To make them able to reach; to give them the power of reaching. Which Infinitive is this?

**The more easily.** "The" is a Demonstrative adverb, and signifies "to this extent." See *Mid. Gram.* § 257 (c).

**Admirably.** In a wonderful and excellent way.

**Overcome.** Conquered, mastered.

**3. Projection.** A part standing out beyond the rest.

**Which forms a finger.** Which does the work of a finger.

**Untie.** On the force of the prefix "un" see *Mid. Gram.* § 459.

**4. Prodigious.** Immense, amazing.

**6. Prolongation.** Lengthening out; a continuation lengthwise.

**Coalescing.** Amalgamating; joining together. Is this a Gerund or a Participle?

## WORDS.

§ 1. **1. Animal.** Animate, animation, animalcule.

**Distinct.** Distinguish, distinctly, distinction, distinctness.

**Species.** Special, specimen, especially.

**3. Writers.** Write, writ, writer.

**Deceived.** Deceit, deceive, deception, deceptive, deceitful, deceitfully, deceptively, deceiver.

**4. Separate.** Separate (*verb* and *adjective*), separately, separation.

**Weights.** Weigh, weight, weighty, weightily.

**5. Detects.** Detective, detection.

**Move.** Movement, motion, movable.

**7. Sustain.** Sustainec.

**Body.** Bodily, corporeal (Latin form), em-body.

**8. Compelled.** Compel, compulsion, compulsory.

**Abundance.** Abound, abundant, abundance, abundantly.

9. **Flesh.** Fleshly, carnal (Latin form).
10. **Attractive.** Attract, attraction, attractive, attractively.
11. **Alive.** Live (*verb*), live (*adjective*), alive (*adverb*), lively; vital (Latin form).
- Purpose.** Purpose (*noun* and *verb*), purposely.
- Burdens.** Burden (*noun* and *verb*), burdensome.
12. **Sanctity.** Saint, saintly, sanctity, sanctify, sanctimonious.
- Decorate.** Decorum, decorous, decorously, decorate, decoration.
- § 2. 1. **Example.** Sample, example, exemplary, exemplify.
- Wonderful.** Wonder (*noun* and *verb*), wondrous, wonderful, wonderfully.
- Admirably.** Admire, admiration, admirable, admirably.
2. **Hollow.** Hollow (*noun, verb, and adjective*), hollowness.
- Nose.** Nasal (*adjective*), nostril.
3. **Projection.** Pro-ject' (*verb*), pro-ject'-ion (*noun*), proj'-ect (*noun*).
- Separate.** Separate (*verb* and *adjective*), separately, separation).
- Regular.** Regulate, regulation, regular, regularly; rule (*noun* and *verb*), nn-ruly.
- Letters.** Letter, literate, illiterate, literary.
4. **Direction.** Direct (*verb* and *adjective*), directly, in-direct, directness, direction.
- Prodigious.** Prodigy, prodigiously.
- Roots.** Root (*verb* and *noun*), radical (Latin form), radically, eradicate.
5. **Only.** One, al-one, unit (Latin form), unity, unite, unitedly.
- Man.** Manly, human (Latin form), humane, humanity, humanise.
6. **Coalescing.** Coalesce, coalition.

## 28.—Elephants in Saw-Mills.

1. **Its timber.** After a tree has been cut down and its trunk sawn up for use, the wood or substance of the trunk is called "timber."

2. **Saw-mills.** Mills for sawing up the trunks of trees. Such mills can be worked by water-power or by steam-power.

**Which towns.** Is "which" here Restrictive or Continuitive?

**Mouths.** The part where a river enters the sea is called the river's mouth.

**Timber industry.** Parse "timber." "Industry" as an abstract noun means the opposite to idleness. As a Common noun it means some branch or kind of industry; that is, some occupation. The adjective form to the Abstract noun is "industrious"; the adjective form to the Common noun is "industrial."

3. **Stalking.** Walking with a slow and majestic gait.

**Machinery.** This is a Collective noun denoting the entire stock of machines and instruments used for making anything. On the Collective force of the suffix see *Mid. Gram.* § 462.

**Circular saws.** Saws which are circle-shaped, and are turned round and round as a wheel.

4. **Mounted.** Finished off at the end.

**Brass knobs.** Here observe that "brass" is used as an adjective to qualify "knobs." Whenever the adjective "brazen" is used its meaning is metaphorical; as "a brazen face."

**Just behind.** Here the adverb "just" qualifies the preposition "behind." See *Mid. Gram.* § 253 (a).

5. **For traces.** To do the work of traces. Traces are made of leather, and are part of the harness of a carriage horse. Long iron chains are used for traces in the harness of an elephant.

**Hauled up.** Here "up" is a part of the verb "hauled."

**6. Threads his way.** Picks his way through narrow places, like a thread going through the eye of a needle.

**7. Piling them.** Stacking them up in piles or heaps.

**Water-soaked.** One way of seasoning timber is to let it soak for a long time in water. This washes out the sap.

**8. For show.** To be exhibited in public.

**9. Marvellous.** Wonderful, surprising.

**Sagacity.** Intelligence, quickness of understanding.

#### WORDS.

**1. Abound.** Abundant, abundance, abundantly.

**Imported.** Im-port' (*verb*), im'-port (*noun*), important, importation.

**2. Situated.** Site, situated, situation.

**Noted.** Note (*verb* or *noun*), notorious, notice, notation, notary, notable.

**Industry.** Industrial, industrious. (See note above.)

**3. Struck.** Strike, stroke, striking, strikingly.

**Quietly.** Quiet (*noun* or *verb* or *adjective*), quiescence, acquiesce.

**Circular.** Circle, en-circel, circular, circularly.

**Visited.** Visit (*noun* or *verb*), visitor, visitant, visitation.

**Description.** Describe, descriptive, description.

**4. Assisted.** Assist, assistant, assistance.

**5. Know.** Knowledge, knowingly.

**7. Water.** Water (*noun* or *verb*), watery, aqueous, aquatic (Latin form).

**8. Creatures.** Create, creator, creature, creative.

**Appearing.** Appear, appearance, apparent, apparently.

**9. Marvellous.** Marvel (*noun* or *verb*), marvellous, marvellously.

**Patience.** Patient, patiently; passive, passively; passion, passionate.

## 29.—Capturing Wild Elephants.

### § 1. CAPTURING A SINGLE ELEPHANT.

**1. There are.** Why is "there" used in this place?

**Capturing.** Is this a Verbal noun or a Verbal adjective?

**2. Grazing out.** Grazing at large. Parse "out."

**A.** When the koomkies see a male grazing out alone—*Adv. clause to B.*

**B.** They come gradually towards him, plucking leaves and grass—*Principal clause.*

**C.** As they advance—*Adv. clause to B.*

**D.** And (they come) with as little appearance of purpose—*Co-ord. to B.*

**E.** As (they would come)—*Adv. clause to D.*

**F.** If they were always in his company—*Adv. clause to E.*

**3. Close.** Bring themselves close or near.

**Take possession of.** Monopolise, engross.

**Perceive, notice.** Point out the object to each of these verbs.

**A.** They so entirely take possession of his thoughts—*Principal clause.*

**B.** That he does not perceive—*Adv. clause to A.*

**C.** What danger he is in—*Noun-clause to B.*

**D.** Or (that he does not) notice—*Co-ord. to B.*

*L.* That the hunters are silently creeping up towards him—  
*Noun-clause to D.*

Parse "that" in clauses *B* and *E*.

**4. Thrown off his guard.** "Guard" in this phrase means caution, vigilance, sense of danger.

**Contortions.** Writings and twistings of his limbs.

**1.** They draw the elephant on—  
*Principal clause.*

**B.** Till they bring him near some tree—*Adv. clause to A.*

**C.** Which will be strong enough to bear his struggles and contortions—*Adj. clause to B.*

**D.** After his legs have been tied to it—*Adv. clause to C.*

**5. Dupe.** This word is used for any one who has been deceived.

**6. Deserted.** Forsaken.

**Being bound.** Is this a Verbal noun or a Verbal adjective?

**To get free.** Is this the Simple or the Gerundial Infinitive? How has the verb "get" become Intransitive?

**7. Wiles.** tricks; cunning devices.

### WORDS.

**1. Capturing.** Capture (*verb* or *noun*), captive, captivate, captivity.

**Solitary.** Sole, solely, de-solate, solitude.

**Driving.** Drive, drift.

**2. Gradually.** Grade, gradual, gradually, gradation, de-grade, de-gradation.

**Habit.** Habitual, habituate, inhabit.

**3. Close.** Close (*verb*), close (*adj.* and *adv.*), closet, closure.

**Attention.** Attend, attentive, attentively, attention, attendant.

**4. Intended.** Intent, intention, intentional.

**Draw.** Draught, with-drawal.

**5. Signal.** Signal (*noun* and *adj.*) sign, signify, signally, signalise.

**6. Deserted.** De-sert' (*verb*), des'-ert (*noun*), desertion; deserter.

**Free.** Free (*verb* and *adj.*), freely, freedom.

**Furiously.** Fury, furious, furiously, in-furiate.

**7. Vengeance.** Re-venge (*noun* and *verb*), revengeful; vindictive.

### § 2. CAPTURING A HERD.

**1. Each post, etc.** In what case is this? *Mid. Gram.* § 384 (5).

**The trunk.** In what case is "trunk"? *Mid. Gram.* § 384 (2).

**Corral.** This is the name given to the large enclosure made for entrapping elephants.

**Are to get in.** Are intended to enter.

**3. Brandish.** Move backwards and forwards in the air.

**4. Bar up.** Blockade, shut up.

**7. By and by.** After a short time. *Mid. Gram.* § 375.

**Entice.** Induce by their kind attentions.

**A.** He tries to follow them—  
*Principal clause.*

**B.** And when he finds—*Adverb clause to D.*

**C.** That he cannot follow them—  
*Noun-clause to B.*

**D.** He roars—*Co-ord. to A.*

**E.** And struggles—*Co-ord. to D.*

**F.** As (he would struggle)—*Adverb clause to E.*

**G.** If he would pull the tree down—  
*Adverb clause to F.*

**Would pull.** Wished to pull.

### 30.—Stories about Elephants.

**Gifted.** Endowed by nature.

**Revenge.** The desire to repay an injury.

**Remorse.** Regret for past misdeeds.

**Patience.** Endurance of pain or sorrow without complaint.

**Gratitude.** Thankfulness for past favours.

### § 1. AN ELEPHANT'S REVENGE.

1. **Clothes.** Give the other plural form of the Singular noun, and state the meaning of each form. *Mid. Gram.* § 81.

Put in his trunk. Parse "in."

2. **Withdrew.** On the Intransitive use of this verb see *Mid. Gram.* § 180 (b).

**Jogged off.** Went off at a slow trot.

**Mischievous.** Done from a love of harm or mischief.

3. **He was making.** Point out the object to this verb.

**Laughing-stock.** Object of ridicule or laughter.

4. **Artist.** A man who paints pictures.

**Portray.** Depict; draw or paint the likeness of.

5. **Repressed.** Suppressed, restrained, checked.

6. **At length.** On this adverbial form see *Mid. Gram.* § 267 (1).

A. At length when the artist had nearly finished the portrait  
—*Adverb clause to B.*

B. The elephant filled his trunk with water — *Principal clause.*

C. As (he would fill it)—*Adverb clause to B.*

D. If (he were to fill it) with the intention to drink—*Adverb clause to C.*

7. **Vindictive.** Revengeful.

**Water-pail.** A pail or bucket for carrying some eight or ten quarts of water.

**Masonry tank.** A tank whose sides have been built of brick or stone by masons.

**Chance.** Opportunity; the chance that he had of taking his revenge.

### WORDS.

1. **Business.** Busy (*verb and adjective*), busily, business.

**Open.** Open (*verb and adjective*), openly, openness.

**Clothes.** Cloth (*verb*), cloth (*noun*), clothier.

2. **Mischief.** Mischievous, mischievously.

**Hastily.** Haste, hasten, hasty, hastily.

**Pain.** Pain (*noun and verb*), penal, penalty; painful, painfully.

4. **Artist.** Art, artful, artfully; artist, artisan.

**Head.** Head (*noun*), capital (*Latin form*).

5. **Excessive.** Exceed, excess, excessive, excessively.

**Expenditure.** Expend, expense, expensive, expensively, expenditure.

**Moment.** Momentous, momentary, momentarily.

6. **Painting.** Paint, picture, picturesque.

7. **Vindictive.** Vindictiveness, vindictively; vengeance.

**Lowering.** Low, lowly, lower (*verb*).

### § 2. AN ELEPHANT'S REMORSE.

1. **Barbarous.** Cruel, brutal.

**Arena.** The ground inside the enclosure, where the fight would take place.

2. **Singled out.** Selected.

3. **Goading.** Pricking with a goad.

A. Who had been kindly treated all his life—*Adverb clause to B.*

B. Muller was not used to the rough treatment—*Principal clause.*

C. (That) he now received from the men—*Adjective clause to B.*

*D.* Who were goading him on to fight—*Adjective clause to C.*

Observe the difference between "who" in clauses *A* and *D*. In clause *A* it is used in an Adverbial sense = "because he." In clause *D* it is used in a Restrictive sense. See *Mid. Gram.* § 324.

**Carcass.** Corpse, dead body.

**6. Leave.** Permission.

**With his trunk.** On the difference between "with" and "by" see *Mid. Gram.* § 275 (*b*).

### WORDS.

1. **Space.** Spacious, ex-patiate.

**Nobles.** Noble (*adjective and noun*), nobly, en-noble, nobility, nobleness.

**Spectators.** Spectacle.

2. **Reign.** Reign (*verb and noun*), regent, regency.

**Combatants.** Combat (*verb and noun*), combative, combatant.

**Favourite.** Favour (*verb and noun*), favourite, favourable, favourably.

**Breed.** Breed (*verb and noun*), brood.

3. **Received.** Receive, receipt, reception, receptive, receptively.

5. **Grief.** Grievous, grievously, grave, grieve.

6. **Command.** Command (*noun and verb*), commandment.

7. **Subject.** Subject (*noun, adjective, and verb*), subjective, subjection.

### § 3. AN ELEPHANT'S PATIENCE.

1. **Asked.** This verb takes two objects, a Direct and an Indirect. Point them out.

**Relieve, etc.** Do something to ease the pain of the poor animal.

**The doctor said, etc.** Change the words "he would try," etc., from the Indirect to the Direct form of narration.

**That was commonly, etc.** On the fitness of the word "that" in this place see *Mid. Gram.* § 164.

2. **Extraordinary.** Unusual.

**In a manner.** To a certain extent.

**Restored.** Made sound.

3. **Of himself.** Of his own accord.

**About to endure.** Parse "about." *Mid. Gram.* § 235 (*d*).

**Surgical operation.** An operation such as a surgeon performs. A man who uses the knife or lancet with his patient is called a surgeon; one who gives medicines is called a physician.

**It was over.** On the use of adverbs as complements see *Mid. Gram.* § 270 (*b*).

### WORDS.

1. **Disease.** Ease (*verb and noun*), easy, easily, dis-case. (On the force of "dis" see *Mid. Gram.* § 471.)

**Completely.** Complete (*verb and adjective*), completion, completely.

**Remedy.** Remedy (*verb and noun*), remedial.

2. **Application.** Apply, applicant, application.

**Occasioned.** Occasion (*noun and verb*), occasional, occasionally.

**Effect.** Effect (*noun and verb*), effective, effectual, efficient, efficacious.

3. **Doctor.** Doctrine, doctrinal, doctor (*noun and verb*), docile.

### § 4. AN ELEPHANT'S GRATITUDE.

1. **Account.** Descriptive narrative.

2. **Whenever.** On the force of "ever" see *Mid. Gram.* § 159 (*c*).

**Sketch.** Drawing.

**Docile.** Teachable, patient and obedient.

Would stand. On the force of "would" see *Mid. Gram.* p. 215, par. 4 (c).

A. I performed many long journeys upon an elephant—*Principal clause.*

B. And the docile creature would stand perfectly still—*Coord. to A.*

C. Till my drawing was finished—*Adverb clause to B.*

D. Whenever I wished to make a sketch—*Adverb clause to B.*

3. Breakfast. The first meal in the day; the meal which "breaks" the "fast" or hunger.

To be cheered. Is this the Simple or Gerundial Infinitive?

Sugar-candy. Sugar reduced to a crystallised state by boiling.

#### WORDS.

1. Account. Account (*verb* and *noun*), accountant, accountable, accountably.

Convenience. Convene, convenient, conveniently, convenience.

2. Perfectly. Perfect (*verb* and *adjective*), perfection, perfectly.

Still. Still (*verb* and *adjective*), stillly, stillness.

### 31.—Make Haste to Live.

The purpose of this poem is to urge men to make the best use of life while it lasts,—to spend it in profitable labour, and not in idleness or in useless enjoyments,—"to work while it is day; for the night cometh when no man can work."

1. How swift, etc. On the exclamatory use of "how" see *Mid. Gram.* § 259.

4. Up then. Arise then. The verb "be" is understood, and "up" is its complement. See *Mid. Gram.* § 270 (b).

Ease and self. Ease and self-indulgence. Set before thine eyes (as the object to live for) the useful, not the great,—the thing that lasts for ever,—the silent toil that is never spent in vain.

5. The useful. Some noun like "thing" is understood after this adjective.

Is not lost. Is not wasted; is not spent in vain.

6. Poor, etc. Poor and worthless in the eyes of man, but precious in the eyes of God.

Eternal. Undecaying, imperishable.

A. Sow thou by day and night the seed—*Principal clause.*

B. Whose leaf and flower bring forth at last the eternal fruit—*Adjective clause to A.*

C. Though (they are) poor in human sight—*Adverb clause to B.*

#### WORDS.

3. Sloth. Slow, sloth, sluggard, slowly.

4. Speed. Speed (*verb* and *noun*), speedy, speedily.

Watch. Watch (*verb* and *noun*), watchful, watchfully.

6. Sow. Seed sower, seedling.

7. Judge. Judgment, judge (*noun* and *verb*), judicial, judicious. (*Judicial* is the adjective of *judge*; *judicious* of *judgment*.)

### 32.—Select Precepts.

§ 1. 3. Devise evil. Plot or plan to carry out some evil purpose.

4. Penny. Poverty. The meaning is that he who talks about his work instead of doing it will come to want.

5. Abomination. Object of hatred.

6. Place of refuge. Place of safety in the time of danger.



8. **Exposeth.** Displays, makes known in public.

9. **A sound heart.** A happy and contented heart.

10. **The poor, the needy.** The noun "men" or "persons" is understood after these adjectives. See *Mid. Gram.* § 128 (1).

11. **Hath hope.** Is hopeful and cheerful.

14. **The evil and the good.** See note on "the poor and the needy."

15. **Correction.** Reproof or advice given for the correction of faults.

**Regardeth.** Pays attention to.

16. **Loving favour.** Favour or kindness that proceeds from love.

§ 2. 1. **At dead of night.** "Dead" is here used as a noun; and means "the dead or silent hour."

**Startled.** Alarmed, frightened.

3. **Respectful.** Courteous, civil.

4. **Incense.** The fragrant smoke

that comes from spices and fragrant gums used in sacrifice.

5. **Use men, etc.** The meaning is, "do not discard a man because you see in him one or two failings. Value him for his good points, and do not reject him for his bad ones."

§ 3. **Much exercise and little food.** This means "much exercise and *not much* food." See *Mid. Gram.* § 94.

§ 4. 1. **Only because.** Here the adverb "only" qualifies the conjunction "because." See *Mid. Gram.* § 253 (b).

**Best policy.** The most politic or prudent plan to act upon.

**Being rogues.** Here "being" is a Verbal noun and "rogues" is its complement.

3. This maxim is directed against obstinacy and perversity.

5. **Bear with.** Have patience with; tolerate.

THE END

